

Visteon

Name
Simon Hanwood
PD Team Leader

Visteon Engineering Services Ltd.
Springfield Lyons Approach,
Chelmsford Business Park
Chelmsford, Essex CM2 5LB,
United Kingdom
shenwood@visteon.com

To whom it may concern

Date : 2nd March 2018

Subject : User Manual statement for USA and Canada

FCC ID: NT8-AHUCHRFORD , IC ID: 3043-AHUCHRFORD

Hereby declare that for the following released by us product
model name: Radio AHU, Brand name Fo Mo Co

Visteon has informed Ford Motor Company who embedded this product into their own host applications, that following statement must be included to the end-user manual

USA

FCC § 15.19 Labelling requirements

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt

RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC § 15.21 Information to user

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RF Exposure Requirements

To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, the device must be installed to

provide a separation distance of at least 20 cm from all persons.

Canada

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt

RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions

suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est

susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Signature by:

 2/3/18

Name: Simon Henwood
Title: PD Team Leader

FORD **FIESTA** Owner's Manual

Ford





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2018

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3654en 20180125111608



Table of Contents edited

Introduction

About This Manual (G1467680)	9
Symbols Glossary (G1470774)	9
Data Recording (G1590702)	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation (G1523642)	12
Mobile Communications Equipment (G1448348)	12

At a Glance edited

Instrument Panel Overview - LHD (G1866792) edited.....	14
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD (G1866793) edited.....	15

Child Safety edited

Installing Child Restraints (G1884835)	18
Child Restraint Positioning (G1884836) edited.....	22
Child Safety Locks (G1869658)	28

Seatbelts edited

Fastening the Seatbelts (G1754073)	29
Seatbelt Height Adjustment (G1546351)	29
Seatbelt Reminder Seatbelt Reminder (G1952214) edited.....	30

Supplementary Restraints System edited

Principle of Operation (G1477594) edited.....	32
Driver Airbag (G1869721) edited.....	32
Passenger Airbag (G1869722) edited.....	33
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off (G1869723)	33
Side Airbags (G1477597) edited.....	34
Side Curtain Airbags (G1477599) edited.....	35

Keys and Remote Controls edited

General Information on Radio Frequencies (G1477600)	36
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry (G1867409) edited.....	36
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key (G1883603)	38
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control (G1562151)	40
Passive Key Backup Position (G1867411)	40

MyKey™ edited

Principle of Operation (G1930080) edited.....	41
MyKey Settings MyKey Settings - Excluding: ST (G1930081) edited.....	41
MyKey Settings MyKey Settings - ST (G1965931) edited.....	42
Creating a MyKey Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start (G1952236) edited.....	43
Creating a MyKey Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start (G1930082) edited.....	44
Programming a MyKey Programming a MyKey (G1952237) edited.....	45
Clearing All MyKeys Clearing All MyKeys (G1952238) edited.....	46
Checking MyKey System Status Checking MyKey System Status (G1952239) edited.....	46
MyKey Troubleshooting MyKey Troubleshooting - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start (G1952240) edited.....	47
MyKey Troubleshooting MyKey Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Push Button Start (G1930087) edited.....	47

Doors and Locks edited

Locking and Unlocking (G1869729)	49
Keyless Entry (G1869730) edited.....	51

Table of Contents edited

Liftgate

Manual Liftgate (G1869733)	54
----------------------------------	----

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System (G1611956)	55
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery (G1728931)	55
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm (G1725570)	56

Door Edge Protection edited

Principle of Operation (G1694492) edited	58
---	----

Steering Wheel edited

Adjusting the Steering Wheel (G1448428)	59
Heated Steering Wheel (G1769260) edited	59

Wipers and Washers edited

Windshield Wipers (G1874570)	61
Autowipers (G1874571) edited	61
Windshield Washers (G1874572) edited	63
Rear Window Wiper and Washers (G1874573) edited	64

Lighting edited

General Information (G1584682)	65
Lighting Control (G1884669)	65
Autolamps (G1921176)	66
Instrument Lighting Dimmer (G1911490) edited	67
Headlamp Exit Delay (G1448496)	67
Automatic High Beam Control Automatic High Beam Control (G1952622) edited	67
Front Fog Lamps (G1868417) edited	68
Rear Fog Lamps (G1868418) edited	69
Headlamp Leveling (G1547833)	69

Direction Indicators (G1875446)	69
Interior Lamps (G1910715)	70

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows (G1867865)	71
Global Opening and Closing (G1907822)	72
Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System/Power Fold Exterior Mirrors (G1867602)	72
Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Exterior Mirrors (G1867603)	73
Interior Mirror (G1587232)	73

Moonroof edited

Opening and Closing the Moonroof (G1882071) edited	75
Venting the Moonroof (G1882072)	75
Bounce-Back (G1882073) edited	75
Opening and Closing the Sun Shades (G1882074)	75

Instrument Cluster edited

Gauges (G1867938) edited	76
Warning Lamps and Indicators (G1867939) edited	77
Audible Warnings and Indicators (G1867940)	81

Information Displays edited

General Information (G1867945) edited	82
Trip Computer (G1911042) edited	85
Personalized Settings (G1911040) edited	87
Information Messages (G1867946) edited	89

Climate Control edited

Air Vents (G1867596)	101
----------------------------	-----

Table of Contents edited

Manual Climate Control (G1867581)	
edited.....	101
Automatic Climate Control (G1867582)	
edited.....	103
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC) (G1885442)	
edited.....	104
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC) (G1885443)	
edited.....	106
Heated Windshield (G1688416) edited.....	107
Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC) (G1878082) edited.....	107
Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With: Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC) (G1866812) edited.....	107
Heated Exterior Mirrors (G1866813)	107

Seats edited

Sitting in the Correct Position (G1553331)	
edited.....	108
Head Restraints (G1910909)	108
Manual Seats - 3-Door (G1909185)	109
Manual Seats - 5-Door (G1909186)	112
Rear Seats (G1909499)	113
Heated Seats Heated Seats (G1936573)	
edited.....	114

Auxiliary Power Points edited

Auxiliary Power Points (G1944778) edited.....	115
Cigar Lighter (G1477648) edited.....	116

Storage Compartments

Cup Holders (G1477702)	117
Device Holder (G1868739)	117

Starting and Stopping the Engine edited

General Information (G1448534)	118
Ignition Switch (G1518436) edited.....	118
Push Button Ignition Switch (G1869760)	
edited.....	119
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start (G1546401)	121
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With: Push Button Start (G1618558)	121
Starting a Diesel Engine (G1608041)	
edited.....	122
Switching Off the Engine (G1477713)	124
Engine Block Heater (G1752502)	124

Unique Driving Characteristics edited

Auto-Start-Stop Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission (G1948553)	
edited.....	126
Auto-Start-Stop Auto-Start-Stop (G1948552) edited.....	127
EcoSelect (G1906297) edited.....	129

Fuel and Refueling edited

Safety Precautions (G1448576)	130
Fuel Quality - Gasoline (G1477715) edited.....	130
Fuel Quality - Diesel (G1477716) edited.....	131
Fuel Filler Funnel Location (G1728199)	131
Running Out of Fuel (G1809496)	131
Refueling (G1809497) edited.....	134
Fuel Consumption (G1944721) edited.....	137

Engine Emission Control edited

Catalytic Converter (G1876874) edited.....	139
Gasoline Particulate Filter Gasoline Particulate Filter (G1970494) edited.....	139

Table of Contents edited

Diesel Particulate Filter (G1876876)	
edited.....	141

Transmission edited

Manual Transmission Manual	
Transmission - 5-Speed Manual	
Transmission (G1939965) edited.....	147
Manual Transmission - 6-Speed Manual	
Transmission (G1950186) edited.....	147
Automatic Transmission (G1964353)	
edited.....	148

Brakes

General Information (G1526280)	152
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes	
(G1448584)	152
Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	
(G1521671)	152
Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission	
(G1448585)	153
Hill Start Assist (G1644165)	153

Traction Control edited

Principle of Operation (G1448586)	155
Using Traction Control (G1913042) edited.....	155

Stability Control edited

Principle of Operation (G1477729)	156
Using Stability Control - Excluding: ST	
(G1477730)	156
Using Stability Control Using Stability	
Control - ST (G1932667) edited.....	157

Parking Aids edited

Principle of Operation (G1477731)	158
Rear Parking Aid (G1973543) edited.....	158
Front Parking Aid (G1973544) edited.....	160
Side Sensing System (G1867958) edited.....	162
Active Park Assist (G1867959) edited.....	164

Rear View Camera (G1867960)	172
-----------------------------------	-----

Cruise Control edited

Principle of Operation (G1448594)	175
Using Cruise Control (G1868749) edited.....	175
Using Adaptive Cruise Control (G1868799)	
edited.....	176

Driving Aids edited

Speed Limiter (G1936914) edited.....	182
Driver Alert (G1886863)	182
Lane Keeping System (G1886864)	184
Blind Spot Information System (G1745160)	
.....	186
Cross Traffic Alert (G1768802)	188
Traffic Sign Recognition (G1562345)	
edited.....	191
Eco Mode Eco Mode (G1952525) edited.....	192
Pre-Collision Assist Pre-Collision Assist	
(G1973410) edited.....	193
Drive Control Drive Control (G1960037)	
edited.....	198

Load Carrying edited

General Information (G1477738)	199
Rear Under Floor Storage (G1908327)	199
Luggage Covers (G1911342) edited.....	199
Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles	
Without: Panoramic Roof Opening	
Panel (G1868888)	200
Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles	
With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel	
(G1868565)	200

Towing edited

Towing a Trailer - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.1L,	
1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel (G1703012)	
edited.....	202

Table of Contents edited

Towing a Trailer - 1.5L EcoBoost™ (G1581962)	203
Tow Ball (G1477788)	203
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission (G1608049)	206
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission (G1693735)	206

Driving Hints edited

Breaking-In (G1477791)	208
Economical Driving (G1598582) edited	208
Cold Weather Precautions (G1477792)	209
Driving Through Water (G1661881)	209
Floor Mats (G1448653)	209
Engine Overspeed Engine Overspeed (G1972108) edited	210

Roadside Emergencies edited

Hazard Flashers (G1477795) edited	211
First Aid Kit (G1477796)	211
Warning Triangle (G1477797)	211
Fuel Shutoff (G1448655) edited	211
Jump Starting the Vehicle (G1965077) edited	212
Towing Points (G1869631)	213

Fuses edited

Fuse Box Locations Fuse Box Locations (G1936886) edited	215
Fuse Specification Chart (G1893599)	215
Changing a Fuse (G1923462) edited	222

Maintenance edited

General Information (G1477802)	224
Opening and Closing the Hood (G1867970)	224
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, LHD (G1867971)	225

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, RHD (G1867972)	226
Under Hood Overview - 1.1L Duratec, LHD (G1867973)	227
Under Hood Overview - 1.1L Duratec, RHD (G1867974)	228
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, LHD (G1867977)	229
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, RHD (G1867978)	230
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, LHD (G1867975)	230
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, RHD (G1867976)	231
Engine Oil Dipstick - Gasoline (G1688369)	232
Engine Oil Dipstick - Diesel (G1588994)	233
Engine Oil Check (G1562149) edited	233
Removing and Installing the Engine Undershield (G1870813)	233
Oil Change Indicator Reset Oil Change Indicator Reset (G1951144) edited	234
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline (G1830390)	235
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel (G1830389)	235
Engine Coolant Check (G1477815)	235
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check (G1870811)	236
Brake Fluid Check (G1717969)	236
Clutch Fluid Check (G1717970)	237
Washer Fluid Check (G1689135)	237
Changing the 12V Battery (G1667059) edited	237
Checking the Wiper Blades (G1448670)	239
Changing the Front Wiper Blades (G1857142)	239
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades (G1874721)	239

Table of Contents edited

Removing a Headlamp (G1867984) edited.....	240
--	-----

Removing a Rear Lamp (G1867985)	240
---------------------------------------	-----

Changing a Bulb (G1867986) edited.....	242
--	-----

Track Use edited

Track Use Track Use (G1965713) edited.....	247
--	-----

Vehicle Care edited

Cleaning the Exterior (G1477841) edited.....	248
--	-----

Cleaning the Interior (G1477842) edited.....	249
--	-----

Cleaning Leather Seats (G1821407)	250
---	-----

Repairing Minor Paint Damage (G1477843)	251
---	-----

Cleaning the Wheels (G1546526)	251
--------------------------------------	-----

Body Styling Kits (G1840759)	251
------------------------------------	-----

Wheels and Tires edited

General Information (G1477844) edited.....	252
--	-----

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit (G1640978) edited.....	252
--	-----

Tire Care (G1477846)	259
----------------------------	-----

Using Winter Tires (G1477847)	260
-------------------------------------	-----

Using Snow Chains (G1914658)	260
------------------------------------	-----

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (G1928643)	260
--	-----

Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel (G1883131)	264
---	-----

Tire Pressures - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Manual Transmission (G1892350) edited.....	270
---	-----

Tire Pressures - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Automatic Transmission (G1892351) edited.....	272
--	-----

Tire Pressures - 1.1L (G1868861) edited.....	274
--	-----

Tire Pressures - 1.5L Diesel (G1892353) edited.....	276
---	-----

Tire Pressures Tire Pressures - 1.5L EcoBoost™ (G1938064) edited.....	278
---	-----

Lug Nuts (G1868862) edited.....	280
---------------------------------	-----

Capacities and Specifications edited

Vehicle Dimensions (G1867992)	281
-------------------------------------	-----

Towbar Dimensions (G1867994)	282
------------------------------------	-----

Vehicle Identification Plate (G1555683)	284
---	-----

Vehicle Identification Number (G1601750)	284
--	-----

Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™ (G1868000)	285
---	-----

Capacities and Specifications - 1.1L Duratec (G1868001) edited.....	286
---	-----

Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel (G1868003) edited.....	288
--	-----

Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™ (G1868002)	289
---	-----

Bulb Specification Chart (G1867995) edited.....	291
---	-----

Fuel Consumption Figures Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™ (G1948539) edited.....	293
---	-----

Fuel Consumption Figures Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.1L Duratec (G1948540) edited.....	294
---	-----

Fuel Consumption Figures Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel (G1948541) edited.....	295
--	-----

Fuel Consumption Figures Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™ (G1948542) edited.....	296
---	-----

Audio System edited

Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1868871) edited.....	297
--	-----

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 (G1964279) edited.....	299
---	-----

AM/FM Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907904) edited.....	300
---	-----

Table of Contents edited

Digital Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1868872) edited	301
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907555) edited	301
Connecting a Bluetooth Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907905)	301
Compact Disc Player - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1868873) edited	302
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907906)	302
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907907) edited	302
USB Port USB Port (G1967465) edited	303
Emergency Assistance (G1907968) edited	303
Using Voice Recognition (G1907969) edited	306

SYNC™ 3 edited

General Information (G1824128) edited	307
Home Screen (G1824129) edited	320
Using Voice Recognition (G1824130) edited	322
Entertainment (G1824131) edited	345
Phone (G1823158) edited	350
Navigation (G1823159) edited	354
Apps (G1823160) edited	364
Settings (G1823161) edited	366
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting (G1823162) edited	375

Appendices edited

Electromagnetic Compatibility (G1871100)	389
End User License Agreement (G1755143) edited	391
Declaration of Conformity Declaration of Conformity (G1941190) edited	420

Introduction

ABOUT THIS MANUAL (G1467680)

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

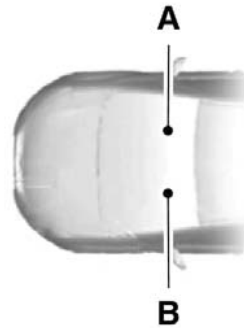
Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY (G1470774)

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert.



See the Owner's Manual.



Air conditioning system.



Anti-lock braking system.



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks.



Battery.



Battery acid.



Brake fluid level.

Introduction



Brake system.



Brake failure.



Cabin air filter.



Check fuel cap.



Child safety door lock.



Child safety door unlock.



Child seat lower anchor.



Child seat tether anchor.



Cruise control.



Do not open when hot.



Electronic power steering malfunction.



Engine air filter.



Engine coolant.



Engine coolant temperature.



Engine oil.



Explosive gas.



Fan warning.



Fasten seatbelt.



Front airbag.



Front fog lamps.



Fuel pump reset.



Fuse compartment.



Hazard warning flashers.



Heated rear window.



Heated windshield.



Interior luggage compartment release.



Jack.



Keep out of reach of children.



Lighting control.



Low tire pressure warning.

Introduction



Maintain correct fluid level.



Panic alarm.



Parking aid.



Parking brake.



Power steering fluid.



Power windows.



Power window lockout.



Check Engine.



Service engine soon.



Side airbag.



Shield the eyes.



Stability control.



Windshield wash and wipe.

DATA RECORDING (G1590702)

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and malfunctions.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of malfunctions as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and malfunction data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After a malfunction has been corrected, these data are deleted from the malfunction storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

Introduction

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person – possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

Note: *Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.*

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION (G1523642)

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT (G1448348)

WARNING

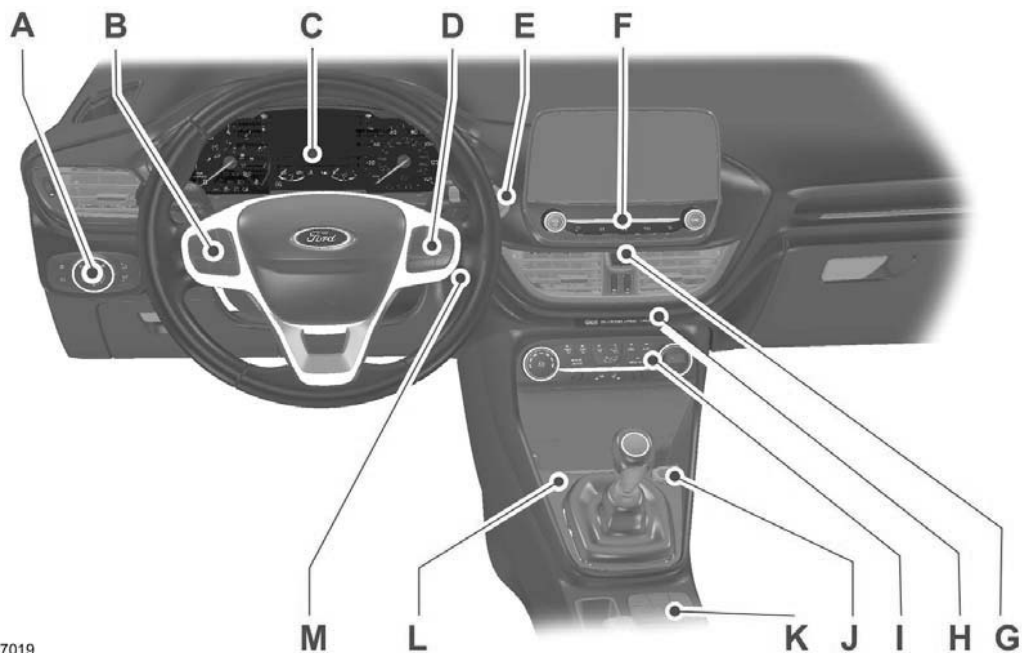


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Introduction

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - LHD (G1866792) edited



E237019

A Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 65).

Cruise control buttons.

B Instrument cluster.

C Information display controls.

D Push button ignition switch.

E Audio unit. F Hazard flasher switch.

G Climate control.

H Auxiliary power point.

I USB port. J Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.

K Ignition switch.

L

B Cruise control buttons. See **Cruise Control** (page 175).

C Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 76).

D Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 82).

E Push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 119).

F Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 297).

G Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 211).

H Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 33).

I Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 101).

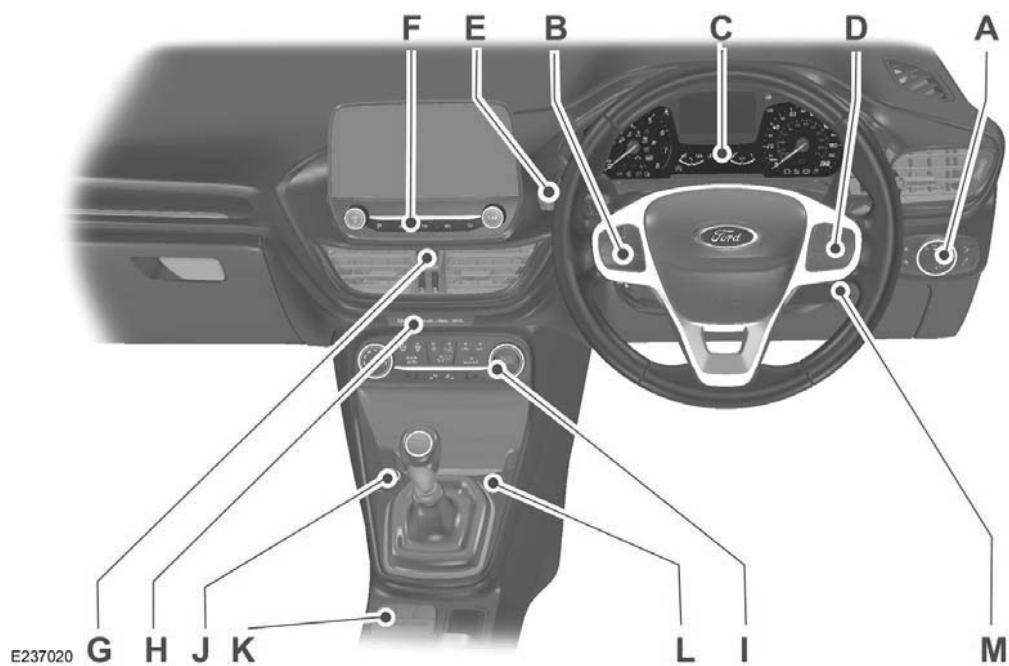
J Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 115).

K EcoSelect button. See **EcoSelect** (page 129).
Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Unique Driving Characteristics** (page 126).
Parking aid button. See **Parking Aids** (page 158).

L USB port. See **USB Port** (page 303).

M Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 118).

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - RHD (G1866793) edited



A	Lighting control. See Lighting Control (page 65).	E	Push button ignition switch. See Push Button Ignition Switch (page 119).
Cruise control buttons:		F	Audio unit. See Audio System (page 297).
B		G	Hazard flasher switch. See Hazard Flashers (page 211).
Instrument cluster:		H	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off (page 33).
C		I	Climate control. See Climate Control (page 101).
Information display controls:		J	Auxiliary power point. See Auxiliary Power Points (page 115).
D	Push button ignition switch:	K	EcoSelect button. See EcoSelect (page 129).
E	Audio unit:		Auto-Start-Stop button. See Unique Driving Characteristics (page 126).
F	Hazard flasher switch:		Parking aid button. See Parking Aids (page 158).
G	Climate control:	L	USB port. See USB Port (page 303).
H	Auxiliary power point:	M	Ignition switch. See Ignition Switch (page 118).
I	USB port:		
J	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator:		
K	Ignition switch:		
L			
B	Cruise control buttons. See Cruise Control (page 175).		
C	Instrument cluster. See Instrument Cluster (page 76).		
D	Information display controls. See Information Displays (page 82).		

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS (G1884835)



E161855



E68916

WARNINGS

 **Extreme Hazard!** Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

 You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

 You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNINGS

 Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

 Do not modify child restraints in any way.

 Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

 Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: *When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.*

Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

Baby Safety Restraint (Group 0+)



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 29 lb (13 kg) in a rearward facing baby safety restraint (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

Child Safety Restraint (Group 1)



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 29 lb (13 kg) and 40 lb (18 kg) in a child safety restraint (Group 1) on the rear seat.

Booster Seats

WARNINGS

-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.
-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.
-  Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.
-  Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
-  Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.
-  Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.
-  You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

Booster Seat (Group 2)



E70710

Secure children that weigh greater than 33 lb (15 kg) but are less than 60 in (150 cm) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion (Group 3)

WARNING



When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



F68924

Secure children that weigh greater than 49 lb (22 kg) but are less than 60 in (150 cm) tall on a booster cushion.

ISOFIX Anchor Points

WARNING



Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



E174928

The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint. These attach to anchor points on the outermost rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.

Note: If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 22).

Top Tether Anchor Points



E87146

For child restraints with a top tether, tether anchor points are on the rear of the second row seats.

Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers

WARNINGS



Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Attach the tether strap to the anchor point.

Note: Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 199).

Note: You may need to lift or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See **Head Restraints** (page 108).



E87145

2. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg

WARNINGS



If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



Make sure that the child restraint manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child restraint.



E185352

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a support leg.

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING (G1884836) edited

WARNINGS



Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.



You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

Seating positions Positions	Mass group categories- Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹ UF	UF ¹ UF	UF ¹ UF
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF . U ¹ U ¹ U ¹ U ¹ Rear seats:	U	U	U	U	U
X Not- Rear seats.	suitable for children in this mass group: U	Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group: U ¹ Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group: However, we- U	U	U	U

We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat. ~~UF~~ Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat. At time of publishing the recommended Group 2 or 3 child restraint is the Britax Römer Kidfix XP. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints. ~~seat.~~

Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

- X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.
- U** Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.
- UF** Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating positions Positions		Mass group categories Group Categories		
		0	0+	1
		Rearward facing Facing		Forward facing Facing Rearward facing Facing
		0–13 kg (0–29 lb)		9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class class.	No ISOFIX		
	Seat type type.			
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class class.	C, D, E	A, B, B1	C, D
	Seat type type.	IL	IL, IUF	IL

Seating positions- Positions		Mass group categories- Group Categories		
		0	0+	1
		Rearward facing- Facing	Forward facing Facing	Rearward facing Facing
		0–13 kg (0–29 lb)		9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
Rear center seat.	Size class class.	No ISOFIX		
	Seat type II: Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information. IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category. type.			

The capital letters A to G define the ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

At the time of publishing the recommended Group 0+ ISOFIX baby safety restraint is the Britax Römer Baby Safe. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended use with particular ISOFIX child restraints. At the time of publishing the recommended Group 0+ restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Recommended Child Restraints

Mass Group Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0+ 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Britax Römer.	Baby Safe Plus with ISOFIX base. ¹	ISOFIX base or seatbelt only.
1 9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	Britax Römer.	Duo Plus. ¹	ISOFIX and top tether anchors or seatbelt only.
2 15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.
3 22–36 kg (49–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint is on the Britax Römer Duo rear outermost seats.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front passenger seat Passenger Seat	Rear outermost seats Outer-most Seats	Rear center seat Center Seat
i-Size Child Restraint Systems: child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS (G1869658)

WARNING



You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E238364

A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

(G1754073)

WARNINGS

 Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seatbelt correctly if you do not hear a click.

 Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



E74124

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

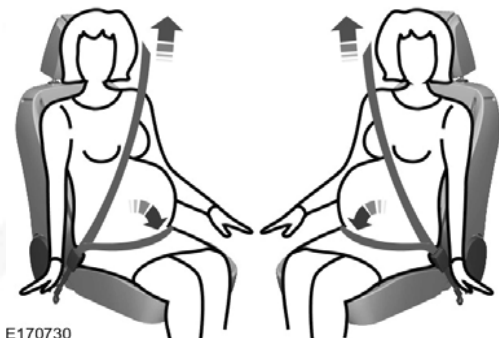
2. Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

WARNING

 Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



E170730

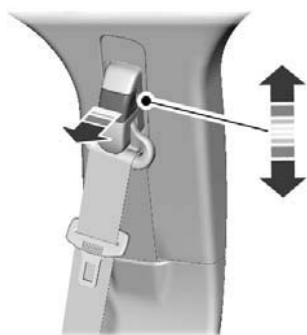
Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT (If Equipped)

(G1546351)

WARNING

 Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E145664

1. Pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER
SEATBELT REMINDER (G1952214)

edited

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on, a front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning

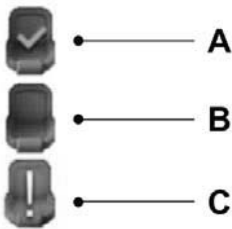
A warning tone sounds if the warning lamp illuminates and your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for up to five minutes or until you fasten your seatbelt.

Switching the Audible Warning Off

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Seatbelt Status



E267667

- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt recently unfastened.

To view the seatbelt status, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Information	Press the OK button.
Seatbelts	Press the OK button.

Seatbelt Status Audible Warning

A warning tone sounds if a rear seatbelt has been fastened and then unfastened.

Note: *If multiple seatbelts have been fastened and then unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one tone sounds.*

Switching the Audible Warning Off

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Seatbelt Status Information Messages

Message	Description
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

(G1477594) **edited**

WARNINGS

 Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

 Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death. Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags, become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

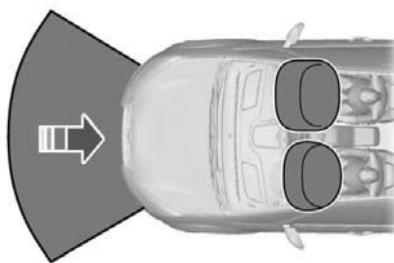
 Use accessory seat covers designed for seats with side- Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Have these fitted by Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an authorized dealer- accident.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

Note: Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

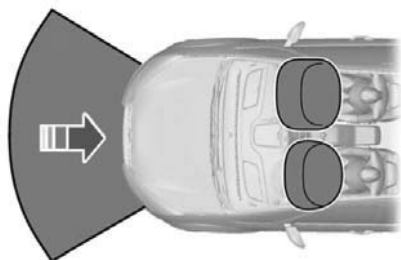
DRIVER AIRBAG (G1869721) edited



E151127

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal crash or a crash that is up to 30 degrees from the left or right: near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

PASSENGER AIRBAG (G1869722) edited



E151127

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal crash or a crash that is up to 30 degrees from the left or right: near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF (G1869723)



E71313

The switch is in the glove compartment. The passenger airbag deactivation indicator is above the climate control unit.

Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

WARNING

 You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.



E249662

2. Turn the key to **OFF**.
3. When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag **OFF** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Switching the Passenger Airbag On

WARNING



You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.



E249648

2. Turn the key to **ON**.

3. When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag **ON** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SIDE AIRBAGS (G1477597) edited

WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.



Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the seat airbag supplemental restraint systems, its fuses or the seat cover on a vehicle containing seat airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected as soon as possible. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in a crash, personal injury or death.

WARNINGS



If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



E72658

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.



E152533

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The airbag deploys during significant lateral crashes. It might also be designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It might also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The airbag does not deploy in a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash, or overturns, frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

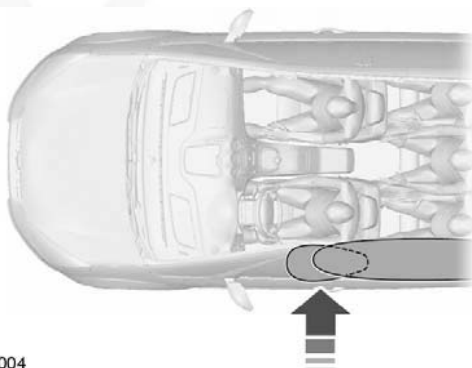
SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS (G1477599)

edited

WARNING



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



E75004

The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES (G1477600)

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

REMOTE CONTROL-VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY (G1867409)

edited

Passive Key

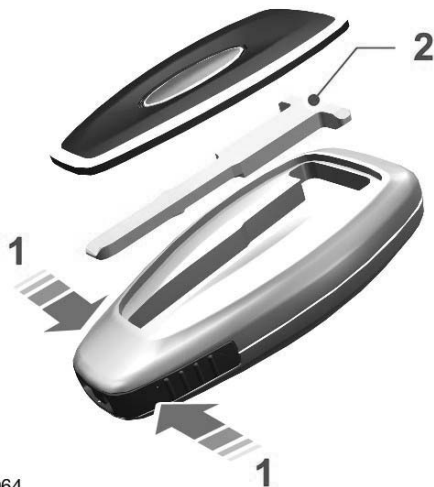


E266840

The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

Removable Key Blade

The intelligentaccess[®] passive key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

Changing the Remote Control Battery

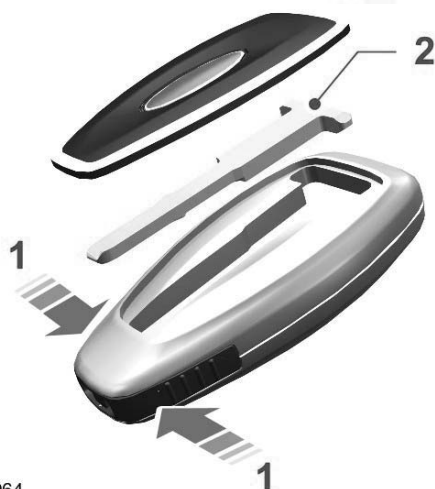


Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Note: Changing the battery does not unpair the transmitter from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is running out of charge. See **Information Messages** (page 89).

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.

2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



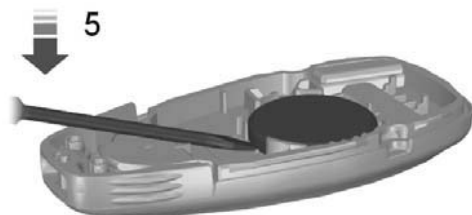
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators flash.

REMOTE CONTROL-VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE FLIP KEY (G1883603)

Remote Flip Key

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The buttons on the key operate the remote control function.

E186181

Changing the Remote Control Battery



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Changing the battery does not unpair the transmitter from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is running out of charge. See **Information Messages** (page 89).

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



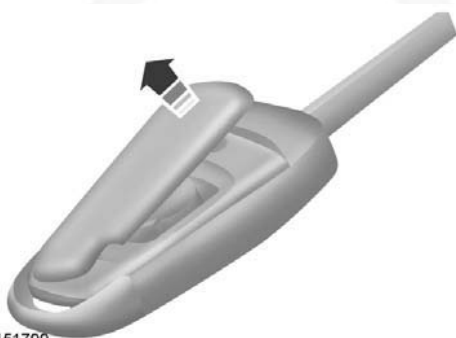
E248483

1. Press the release button.



E248514

2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
3. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



E151799

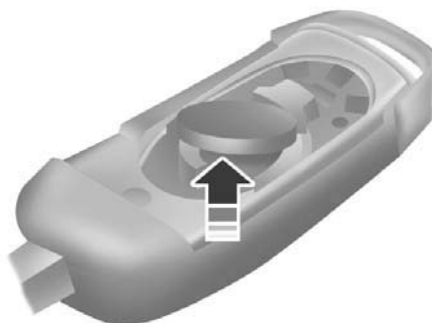
4. Carefully remove the cover.



E151800

5. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.



E151801

6. Remove the battery.
7. Insert a new battery with the + facing upward.
8. Reinstall the battery cover.

Locating Your Vehicle

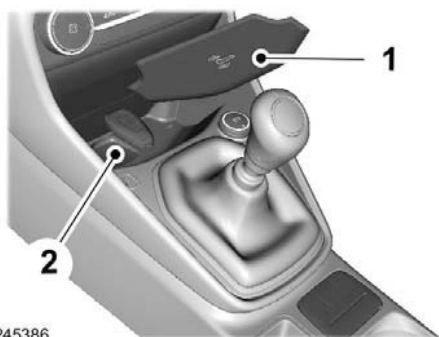
Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators flash.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL (G1562151)

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION (G1867411)



E245386

1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

(G1930080) **edited**

The system is designed to promote good driving behaviors using keys that you have programmed with some restricted settings.

MYKEY SETTINGS MYKEY SETTINGS - EXCLUDING: ST

(G1930081) **edited**

Non-Configurable Settings

Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level indicator turns on earlier.

Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands, when using a MyKey and your vehicle is moving.

Configurable Settings

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 43).

Speed Limit

WARNING



Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Traction Control

If you set traction control to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

MYKEY SETTINGS MYKEY SETTINGS - ST (G1965931) edited

Non-Configurable Settings

Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level indicator turns on earlier.

Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands, when using a MyKey and your vehicle is moving.

Selectable Drive Modes

You cannot select some drive modes when using a MyKey.

Stability Control

You cannot switch stability control off when using a MyKey.

Configurable Settings

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 43).

Speed Limit

WARNING



Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Stability Control

If you set stability control to be always on, the reduced stability control mode cannot be selected when using a MyKey. See **Using Stability Control** (page 157).

CREATING A MYKEY
CREATING A MYKEY -
VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH
BUTTON START (G1952236) edited

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Create MyKey	Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
	Switch the ignition off.

Note: We recommend that you label this key.

MyKey Information Messages

Message	Description
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Hold OK to create MyKey	Displays when creating a MyKey.
Creation completed	Displays to confirm that a MyKey has been created.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.
MyKey not created	Displays if the system fails to create a MyKey.

CREATING A MYKEY

CREATING A MYKEY -

VEHICLES WITH: PUSH

BUTTON START

(G1930082) edited

1. Place an admin key in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page ?).
2. Switch the ignition on.

To create a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Create MyKey	Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
	Switch the ignition off.

Note: We recommend that you label this key.

MyKey Information Messages

Message	Description
Place key in backup location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the key is not placed in the backup position. See Passive Key Backup Position (page ?).
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Hold OK to create MyKey	Displays when creating a MyKey.
Creation completed	Displays to confirm that a MyKey has been created.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.
MyKey not created	Displays if the system fails to create a MyKey.

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY
PROGRAMMING A MYKEY (G1952237)
edited

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.
Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To program a MyKey, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button. Choose a setting and press the OK button. Configure the setting. Switch the ignition off.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS
CLEARING ALL MYKEYS (G1952238)
edited

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To clear all MyKeys, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Clear MyKeys	Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

MyKey Information Messages

Message	Description
Hold OK to clear MyKeys	Displays when clearing all MyKeys.
All MyKeys cleared	Displays to confirm that all MyKeys have been cleared.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM
STATUS CHECKING MYKEY
SYSTEM STATUS (G1952239) edited

Switch the ignition on.

To find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey and also the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
MyKey info	Press the OK button.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING - MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START (G1952240) edited

What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 43).

Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.

Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 43).

Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 43).

Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 43).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING - MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START (G1930087) edited

What is an admin key?

- An admin key is a key that has not been created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 44).

Why can I not create a MyKey?

- The admin key is not placed in the backup position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page ?).
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
- The last MyKey was created without switching the ignition off.

Why can I not program a MyKey?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 44).

Why can I not clear the MyKeys?

- The admin key is not inside your vehicle.
- The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 44).

Why does the MyKey distance not accumulate?

- The key used to start the engine is an admin key.
- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.
- No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 44).
- The MyKeys have been cleared.

Why can I not start the engine with a MyKey?

- An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle.

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

(G1869729)

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch no longer operates after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore function to these switches.

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Note: You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key if the remote control does not operate.

Note: When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Unlocking and starting your vehicle enables the remote control.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

You can also change between the unlocking modes using the information display.

Central Locking



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Double Locking the Doors

WARNING



Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has double locked.

Note: If you unlock the liftgate, all other doors return to the central locked state. You must double lock your vehicle again.

Mislock

This warns you that your vehicle has not locked.

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm.

When you press the lock button again within three seconds, the horn sounds indicating that your vehicle has pre-locked while a door is open. You can switch this feature on or off using the information display.

Auto Relock

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control on the driver door to lock or unlock the doors from inside.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Removing the Lock Cylinder Cap

1. Release the key blade from the remote control. See **Remote Control** (page 36).



E243949

2. Fully insert the key blade into the key slot.
3. Gently pull the lock cylinder cap toward you to release it.
4. Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder.

Locking the Doors

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Double Locking the Doors

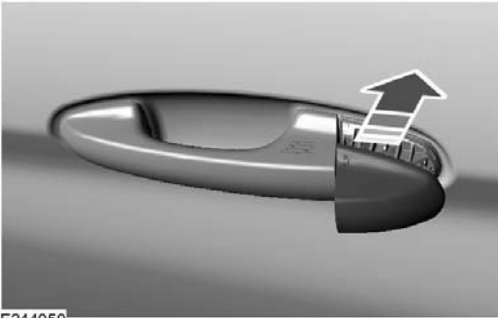
Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

Unlocking the Driver Door

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.

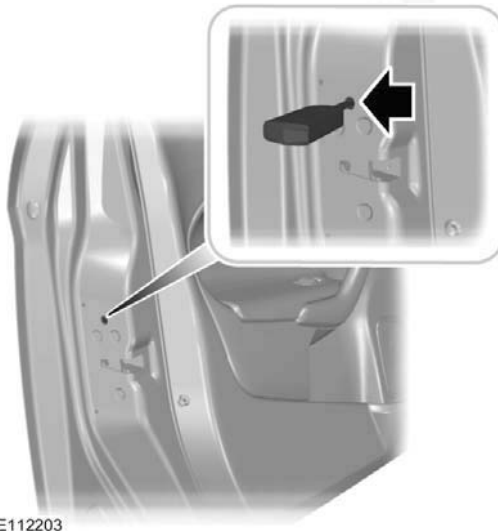
Reinstalling the Lock Cylinder Cap



1. Place the cap over the lock cylinder.
2. Push the cap forward until it clicks into place. Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade

Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Unlocking the Doors

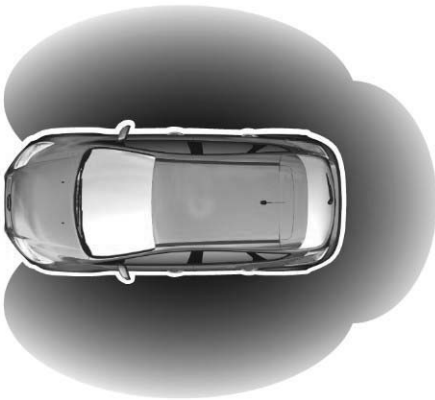
If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

KEYLESS ENTRY (G1869730) edited

The system allows you to unlock, operate and lock your vehicle without using a key or remote control. The system requires a valid passive key to be within one Principle of Operation

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 5 ft (1.5 m) from the front door handles and the liftgate. The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

The system does not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The locking sensors are on the front door handles. Touch a locking sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. Touch a locking sensor twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. When you lock your vehicle, the direction indicators flash to confirm your vehicle has locked and the alarm passive key is armed. When locking your vehicle, do not too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

If the system does not grip function, use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.



E248554

Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Touch a lock sensor twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a ~~locking~~ lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Unlocking Your Vehicle Touch the unlock sensor Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the all exterior door handle handles.



E248553

Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle. Do not touch the lock sensor on the front of the handle. When you unlock your vehicle, the direction indicators flash to confirm your vehicle has unlocked and disarm the alarm. ~~alarm. has disarmed.~~ Unlocking Only the Driver Door You can program the The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the top of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After ~~unlocking function so that only the driver door~~ the doors with the unlock sensor, there is ~~unlocked.~~ a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

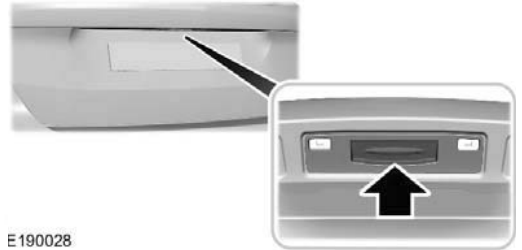
Unlocking the Driver Door

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 49).

If you ~~reprogram~~ program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open the front passenger door first, all ~~of the~~ other doors and the liftgate unlock.

Opening- Unlocking the Liftgate



E 190028

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

Note: A valid passive key must be within the detection range.

Locking the Liftgate

The liftgate locks after you fully close it.

Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside.

Note: Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Deactivated Passive Keys

The system deactivates ~~all~~ passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. ~~To reactivate a key, press~~ Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Liftgate

MANUAL LIFTGATE (G1869733)

WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



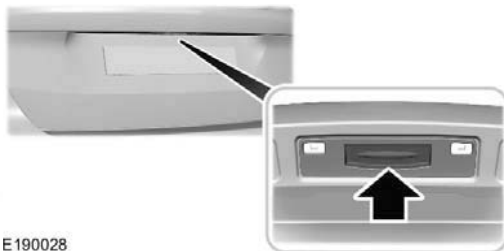
Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

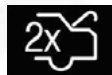
Opening the Liftgate Using the Exterior Release Button



E190028

Press the exterior release button.

Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Liftgate

A recessed grip or handle is inside the liftgate to help with closing.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM (G1611956)

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.

Note: Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle.

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer arms after a short period of time when you switch the ignition off.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer disarms when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY (G1728931)

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

Interior Sensors

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

Note: Do not cover the interior sensors.

Inclination Sensors

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Battery Back-up Sounder (If Equipped)

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system that has its own battery and sounds a siren if the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. The system arms when you lock your vehicle.

Triggering the Alarm

When armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.

Security

- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the hazard flasher flashes for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 82).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set. See **General Information** (page 82).

Arming the Alarm

The alarm arms when you lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 49).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles with Keyless Entry

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 51).

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on within 12 seconds, or by unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

Note: A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 51).

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: PERIMETER ALARM (G1725570)

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard flasher flashes.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm arms when you lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 49).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles With Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Note: *A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door. See **Keyless Entry** (page 51).*

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

(G1694492) **edited**

The front and rear doors have a retractable plastic flap that will move into position when you open a door. The flap will protect the door edge from damage that may be caused by contact with other objects. If the door edge protector does that moves into position when you open a door. The door edge protector protects the door edge from damage that could be caused by contact with other objects.

Do not move freely or becomes stuck, do not attempt to move it. the door edge protector if it becomes stuck, or does not move freely. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. The protective flap as soon as possible.

Note: *The door edge protector may be moved gently out of position when the door is open to allow access for cleaning. Make sure that the flap door edge protector is repositioned correctly otherwise the flap it may not retract when you attempt to close the door.*

Note: *Keep the door edges free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL (G144B428)

WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 108).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (If

Equipped) (G1769260) **edited**

The heated steering wheel button is on the climate controls.



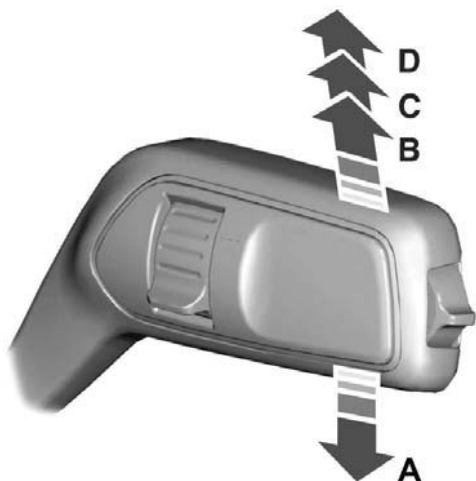
Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

Note: You can ~~locate~~ use the heated steering wheel control under the climate controls. ~~This feature only functions when you switch the engine on.~~ is running.

Note: The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.

Note: *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

WINDSHIELD WIPERS (G1874570)



E248785

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

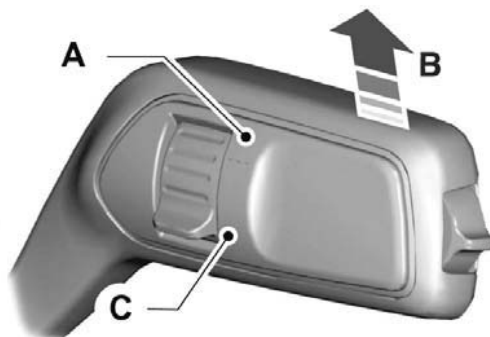
Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 239). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 239).

Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Intermittent Wipe



E242320

- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

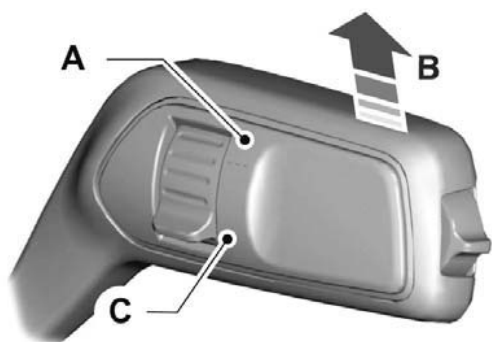
When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped) (G1874571)

edited

Autowipers uses a rain sensor in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield in front of it. The rain sensor continues to monitor the amount of water and adjusts the speed of the wipers.

You can switch autowipers off in the information display. If you switch autowipers off, the windshield wipers operate in intermittent mode.



E242320

- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Move the wiper lever upward to the first position to switch autowipers on.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Settings

To switch autowipers on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Wipers	Press the OK button.
Rain sensing	Press the OK button.

If you leave autowipers on, it may not operate when you switch the ignition on during freezing temperatures. This is because the system has deactivated the rain sensor to prevent damage to the windshield wipers. Defrost the windshield before reactivating the rain sensor. You can reactivate the rain sensor by moving the rotary control or switching autowipers off and on.

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Wet or winter driving weather conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

To keep the windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch autowipers off.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 239).

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

(G1874572)

edited



E242323

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid. You can switch courtesy wipe off in the information display.

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

Heated Washer Jets

(If Equipped)

The system heats the washer fluid when the heated windshield is on.

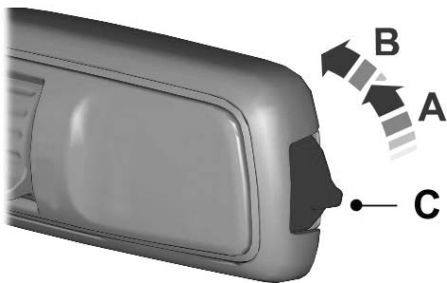
Settings

To switch courtesy wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the button.
Wipers	Press the button.
Courtesy wipe	Press the button.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS (G1874573) edited

Rear Window Wiper



E242324

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

If you shift to reverse (R) when the windshield wipers are on, the rear window wiper also turns on when you shift into reverse and the windshield wipers are on.

You can switch reverse wipe off in the information display.

Note: Make sure that you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

Settings

To switch reverse wipe on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the button.
Wipers	Press the button.
Reverse wiper	Press the button.

Rear Window Washer



E242432

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

GENERAL INFORMATION (G1584682)

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

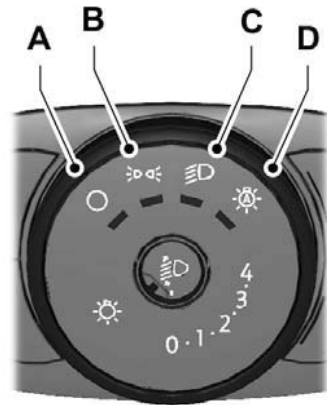
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL (G1884669)



E245649

- | | |
|---|--|
| A | Lamps off. |
| B | Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps. |
| C | Headlamps. |
| D | Autolamps. |

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the system returns to the autolamps position.

Parking Lamps

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Select the parking lamps position to switch the parking lamps on.

Note: Prolonged use of the parking lamps causes the battery to run out of charge.

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

High Beam Headlamps

Switching High Beam Headlamps On and Off



E248603

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam headlamps on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beam headlamps off.

Note: If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the system turns the headlamps on.

Flashing High Beam Headlamps



E248604

Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beam headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS (G1921176)

WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the wipers operate.



E253316

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

Note: When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on.

Note: If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

Note: The headlamps turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the wipers off.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING

DIMMER (G1911490) edited

Repeatedly press or press and hold it to adjust. The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the level- lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

Note: If you disconnect or replace the battery, ~~you must~~ reset the brightness level when the battery is reconnected.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY (G1448496)

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (G1952622) edited

WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

WARNINGS



Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

About Automatic High Beam Control

The system is designed to turn the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switched the system on in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are required.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

The system is designed to turn the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off in the information display.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.

- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

Switching Automatic High Beam Control On or Off

To switch the system on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Lighting	Press the OK button.
Auto highbeam	Press the OK button.

Automatic High Beam Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Overriding Automatic High Beam Control

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Automatic High Beam Control Information Messages

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FRONT FOG LAMPS (G1868417) edited

Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example fog, snow or heavy rain. If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

You can switch the front fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

If you switch the autolamps on, you can only switch the front fog lamps on when the headlamps are on.

The front fog lamps button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on and off.

REAR FOG LAMPS (G1868418) edited

WARNING



Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 164.0 ft (50 m).

You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the front fog lamps or the headlamps are on.

If you switch ~~autolamps on~~, you can only switch the autolamps on, you can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the headlamps are on.

The rear fog lamps button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on and off.

HEADLAMP LEVELING (G1547833)

Adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to your vehicle load.

Set the headlamp leveling control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded. Set the headlamp beams to give between 115–328 ft (35–100 m) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control to the required setting.
3. Press to close the control.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (G1875446)



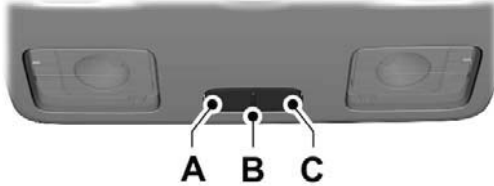
E242676

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

INTERIOR LAMPS (G1910715)

Courtesy Lamp



E249790

- A Switch all lamps on.
- B Switch lamps on and off by door.
- C Switch all lamps off.

If you set the switch to the door position, the courtesy lamp illuminates when you unlock or open any door. If you leave a door open with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp goes off after some time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short time.

The courtesy lamp also illuminates when you switch the ignition off. It goes off after a short time or when you start the engine.

If you set the switch to the all on position with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp illuminates. It goes off after a short time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short time.

Reading Lamps



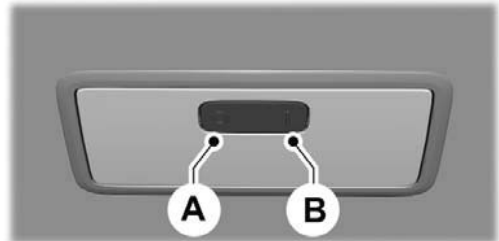
E249791

Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch on and off.

If you switch the ignition off, the reading lamps turn off after a short time.

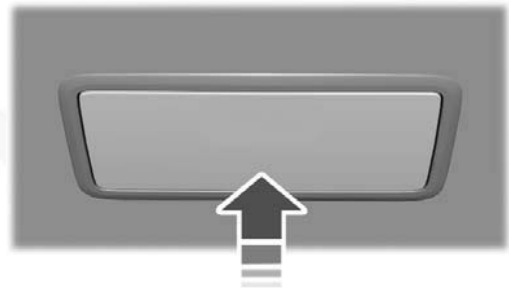
Note: This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Rear Courtesy Lamp



E249955

- A Switch off and door activation position.
- B Switch on.



E250958

For rear lamps without a position switch, press the lamp lens to switch on and off.

Windows and Mirrors

POWER WINDOWS (G1867865)

WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open (If Equipped)

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close (If Equipped)

Fully lift the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Rear Window Lock



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window automatically stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

Overriding Bounce-Back

WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the control within two seconds to override the feature and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually. The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

Note: If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Resetting Bounce-Back

WARNING



Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch fully pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch fully pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

Windows and Mirrors

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING (If Equipped) (G1907822)

You can use the remote control to open and close the windows when the ignition is off.

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 82).

Global Opening

To open the windows and vent the moonroof, do the following:

1. Press and release the remote control unlock button.
2. Press and hold the remote control unlock button.
3. Release the button when movement starts.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

Note: When you unlock your vehicle using the remote control, you can use global opening for a short period of time.

Global Closing

WARNING



When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

To close the windows and moonroof, do the following:

1. Press and hold the remote control lock button.

2. Release the button when movement starts.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function.

Note: The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

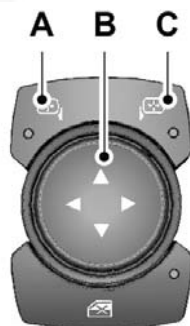
EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM/ POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS (G1867602)

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E250105

- A Left-hand mirror switch.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror switch.

Windows and Mirrors

Folding the Mirrors (If Equipped)

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not automatically unfold.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

You can switch auto-fold on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 82).

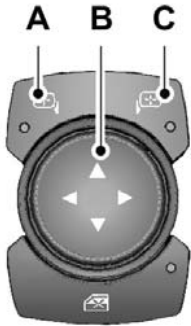
EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER ADJUSTABLE EXTERIOR MIRRORS (G1867603)

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E250105

- A Left-hand mirror switch.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror switch.

Folding the Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

INTERIOR MIRROR (G1587232)

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Windows and Mirrors

Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror (If Equipped)

The mirror dims to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It returns to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when reversing.

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF (G1882071) edited

WARNING



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open and close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.

Opening the Moonroof



Press and release the rear of the control, the moonroof will stop in the venting position.

Press and release the rear of the control again to open the moonroof.

Closing the Moonroof

WARNING



When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.



Fully press ~~the control~~ and release it. ~~the front of the control.~~

VENTING THE MOONROOF

(G1882072)

WARNING



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

BOUNCE-BACK (G1882073) edited

The moonroof ~~automatically~~ stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

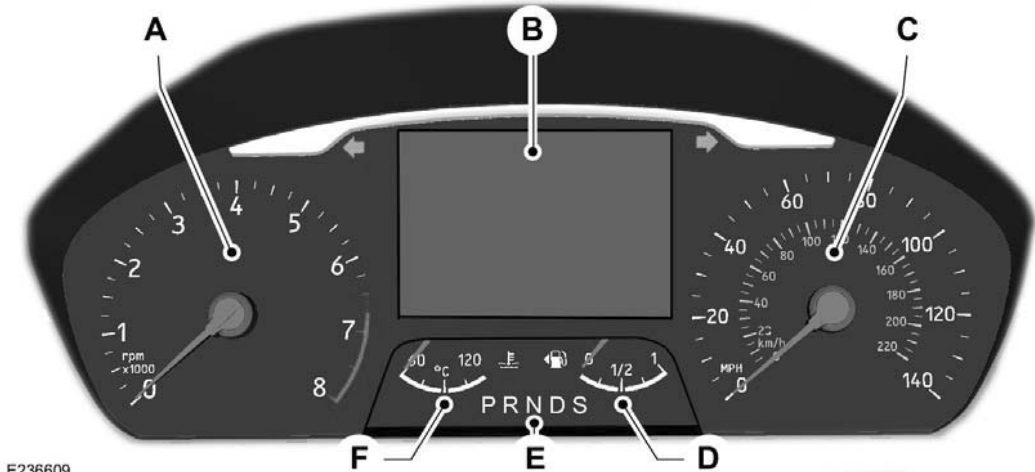


Press and hold the front of the control within a few seconds to ~~override~~ ~~override~~ bounce-back.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUN SHADES (G1882074)

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof. Slide the sun shade backward or forward to open or close it.

GAUGES (G1867938) edited



E236609

- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Automatic transmission gearshift lever position indicator.
- F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Tachometer

Shows the engine speed. A- The discontinuous red line on the tachometer face- indicates the standard maximum engine speed. The red line thickens where the engine speed enters the overspeed limiter.

Information Display

The information display shows the following information:

- Odometer.
- Trip computer- odometer.
- MyView information.
- Driver assistance information.
- Navigation information.
- Audio information.
- Phone information. Vehicle and system settings- Outside air temperature:
- Shift indicator.
- Vehicle and system settings.
- Outside air temperature.

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

The system detects unauthorized odometer adjustments to avoid total distance reading fraud. If the system detects an unauthorized odometer adjustment, the total distance reading displays XXXX. Recovery of the original mileage could result in system damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty and may carry a significant expense.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 85).

Vehicle and System Settings Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to adjust various system settings.

See **General Information** (page 82).

Speedometer

Shows the vehicle speed.

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



A



B

E236403

- A The fuel filler door is on the left-hand side of your vehicle.
- B The fuel filler door is on the right-hand side of your vehicle.

Automatic Transmission Gearshift Lever Position Indicator (If Equipped)

Shows the selected gear. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 148).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section.

If the needle enters the red section, a warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the engine-is overheating information display. If you continue to operate the engine at high engine speeds with the needle in the red section, the engine speed reduces automatically to prevent engine damage.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool.

Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS (G1867939) edited

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic Headlamp High Beam Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the system ~~automatically~~ turns the headlamp high beam on.

See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page ?).

Auto-Start-Stop Indicator



It illuminates green when the engine has automatically stopped. It flashes to inform you when the engine needs to restart.

Note: *If it illuminates orange, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*



The indicator is shown with a strikethrough if the system is not available.

See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 126). See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 126).

Blind Spot Information System Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 186).

Brake System Warning Lamp

WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle ~~checked immediately.~~ immediately checked.

Collision Warning System Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It illuminates red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

See **Pre-Collision Assist** (page ?).

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See **Cruise Control** (page 175).

Direction Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the ~~left or right~~ direction indicator or the hazard flashers on. Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Warning Lamps



Service Engine Soon

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Frost Warning Lamp

WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above 39°F (4°C) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It illuminates when the outside air temperature is 39°F (4°C) or below.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on. It illuminates when the

automatic high beam control system turns the headlamp high beam on.

Headlamp Low Beam Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the low beam headlamps are on, this indicates that a headlamp low beam bulb has failed.

Ignition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

Launch Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Lane Keeping Alert Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the system activates. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 184).

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp (If Equipped)



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure.

See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page ?).

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 233).

Over Speed Warning Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the vehicle speed exceeds 75 mph (120 km/h).

Performance Shift Indicator



It illuminates when the powertrain reaches the optimum upshift point. It flashes when the engine is close to hitting the engine speed limiter.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance,



fuel economy or lower emissions.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Stability Control** (page 156). See **Traction Control** (page 155).

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Stability Control** (page 156).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS (G1867940)

Airbag Secondary Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working. Sounds when the airbag warning lamp malfunction tone is not working.

Auto-Start-Stop Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and Auto-Start-Stop has turned the engine off.

Automatic Transmission

Sounds when you open the driver door and the transmission is not in park (P).

Door Ajar

Sounds when a door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

Exterior Lamps On

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

Low Fuel Reminder

Sounds when the fuel level is low.

Key Outside Vehicle

Sounds when you remove the passive key from your vehicle and the engine is running.

Over Speed Warning

Sounds when your vehicle speed exceeds a set limit.

Parking Brake On

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

Seatbelt Reminder

Sounds when a seatbelt is unfastened in an occupied seat and your vehicle is moving.

GENERAL INFORMATION (G1867945)

edited

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Information Display Controls



E236983

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to adjust various system settings on your vehicle. The information display shows the system settings.



E250032

- A Return button.
- B OK and menu toggle button.
- C Menu button.

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to navigate through the main screens:

Main Menu
Trip computer.
Trip computer 1
Trip computer 2
MyView
Driver assist.
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Settings

1. Press the menu toggle button up or down to navigate through the main screens.
2. From a main screen press the menu button to access the menus.

- Press the menu toggle button up or down to navigate to the desired menu item.
- Press OK or the menu button to select the desired menu item.
- Press the menu toggle button up or down to navigate to the desired submenu item.
- Press OK or the menu button to select the desired submenu item.
- Press OK or the menu button to choose and confirm settings.
- Press the return button to exit the menus.

Locked Menus

You cannot access some menu items and vehicle settings if your vehicle is moving. Locked items appear gray and have a padlock symbol.

If your vehicle is moving the following message may appear in the instrument cluster:

Message
Vehicle must be stationary to access settings

Menu Structure

Some menus may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to navigate through the main screen:

Main Menu	Submenu	Action
Trip computer 1	Trip computer 2	See Trip Computer (page 85).
	Reset individual values	
	Configure view	
Trip computer 2	Trip computer 1	
	Trip computer 2 reset	
	Configure view	
MyView	FORD PERFORMANCE	You can switch the display on or off.
	Digital speedometer	You can switch the display on or off.
	Speedo/instant. fuel	You can switch the display on or off.
	Trip computer/audio	You can switch the display on or off.

Information Displays edited

Main Menu	Submenu	Action
	Eco coach	You can switch the display on or off.
	Calm screen	You can switch the display on or off.
Driver assist.	Traction control	On or Off.
	Launch control	On or Off.
	BLIS	On or Off.
	Trailer BLIS	On or Off.
	Pre-collision Assist	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	Traffic sign recognition	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	Lane keeping system	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	Driver alert	On or Off.
	Hill Start Assist	On or Off.
	Cross traffic alert	On or Off.
	Cruise control	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	Speed limiter	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	Rear Park Pilot	On or Off.
Navigation	Home	Set your home address.
	Favourite destinations	Set your favorite destinations.
	Previous destinations	The system stores recent destinations.
Audio	Radio	Set your favorite radio station presets.
	CD	Show CD information.
	Bluetooth	Connect your device.
Phone	All calls	Show call information.

Main Menu	Submenu	Action
	Incoming calls	Show call information.
	Missed calls	Show call information.
	Outgoing calls	Show call information.
Settings	Information	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	Display	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	Driver assistance	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	Vehicle settings	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.
	MyKey	Enter the submenu and select your desired settings.

TRIP COMPUTER

(G1911042)

edited

Resetting the Trip Computer

Navigate to the following main menu item.

You can reset the trip computer and personalize it using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 82).

Menu Item	Action ~~Press the , the following message appears in the information display.~~
Trip computer 1	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.
Trip computer 2	~~You can also~~ Press and hold the button until the system reset ~~at Trip 2 values.~~ confirmation appears.

Alternatively you can reset individual trip values. ~~Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.~~

Menu Item	Action
Trip computer 1	Press the menu ~~button~~ button.
Trip computer 2	~~and then navigate to~~ Press the following menu item: button.
Reset individual values	Press the ~~or the menu button~~ and choose from the following: Press the , the following message appears in the information display: button.
Reset trip odometer	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears. Press the , the following message appears in the information display.
Reset trip timer	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears. Press the , the following message appears in the information display.
Reset average fuel	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears. Press the , the following message appears in the information display.
Reset average speed	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears. Press the , the following message appears in the information display. Press and hold the button until the system reset confirmation appears. You can also reset individual Trip 2 values.

Personalization

Navigate to the following main menu item.

Menu Item	Action
Trip computer 1	Press the menu ~~button~~ button.
Trip computer 2	~~and then navigate to~~ Press the following menu item: button.
Configure view	Press the ~~or~~ button.
Trip odometer	Press the menu button and choose from the following: button.
Trip timer	Press the button.
Average fuel consumption	Press the button.

Menu Item	Action
Average speed	Press the button.
Distance to empty	Press the button.
Instantaneous fuel	Press the button.

Note: ~~You can choose to display up to a maximum of four trip computer~~ You can also ~~personalize Trip 2 up to a maximum of four trip computer values.~~ values.

Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys or the total distance since the function was last reset.

Trip Timer

Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.

Average Fuel

Indicates the average fuel consumption of individual journeys or the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Average Speed

Indicates the average vehicle speed of individual journeys or the average vehicle speed since the function was last reset.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle may travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Instantaneous Fuel

Indicates the current fuel consumption.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS (G1911040) edited

Language ~~You can choose an alternative language. Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.~~

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the ~~or the~~ menu button ~~button.~~
Display	~~and then navigate to~~ Press the following menu item. Press the ~~or the~~ menu button and then navigate to the following menu item. ~~button.~~
Language	Choose your applicable setting.

Distance You can change the distance unit to display imperial or metric units, for example miles or kilometers. Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button. **Measure Unit**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the ~~or the~~ menu ~~button~~ button.
Display	~~and then navigate to~~ Press the following menu item. Press the ~~or the~~ menu button and then navigate to the following menu item. ~~button~~ .
Measure unit	Choose your applicable setting.

Changing between metric and imperial units affects the following:

- Distance to empty.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Digital speedometer.
- Odometer.
- Trip odometer.

Temperature Unit You can change the temperature unit to display Celsius or Fahrenheit. Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the ~~or the~~ menu ~~button~~ button.
Display	~~and then navigate to~~ Press the following menu item. Press the ~~or the~~ menu button and then navigate to the following menu item. ~~button~~ .
Temperature unit	Choose your applicable setting.

Tire Pressure Unit You can change the tire pressure unit to display psi, kPa or bar. ~~Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.~~ **(If Equipped)**

Menu Item	Action
Settings	~~Press the or the menu button~~ button.
Display	~~and then navigate to~~ Press the following menu item. Press the ~~or the menu button~~ and then navigate to the following menu item. ~~button.~~
Tyre pressure	Choose your applicable setting.

Chimes You can switch some chimes off. ~~Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.~~

Menu Item	Action
Settings	~~Press the or the menu button~~ button.
Vehicle settings	~~and then navigate to~~ Press the following menu item. Press the ~~or the menu button~~ and then navigate to the following menu item. Press the ~~or the menu button~~ and then navigate to the following menu item. Choose your applicable settings. ~~button.~~
Chimes	Press the button.
Parking space found	Press the button.
Information	Press the button.

INFORMATION MESSAGES

(G1867946) **edited**

Depending on vehicle options and instrument cluster type fitted, some of the following information messages may not be available. Some information messages may be abbreviated.

Accessory Power

Message	Action
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.

Alarm System

Message	Action
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm Alarm announcement	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See Security (page 55).

Automatic High Beam Control

Message	Action
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield.
Front camera temporarily not available	Displays if the front camera sensor malfunctions. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto-Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	Press the brake or clutch pedal. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 126).
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	Press the clutch pedal. The engine requires manually restarting. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 126).
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	Press the brake pedal. The engine requires manually restarting. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 126).
Auto StartStop Press brake harder to activate	Fully press the brake pedal. The engine requires manually restarting. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 126).

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P). The engine requires manually restarting. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 126).
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning and the engine requires manually restarting.
Auto StartStop malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	Displays as a reminder to shift into neutral (N). The engine requires manually restarting. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 126).

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert Systems

Message	Action
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	~~Displays when the~~ The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 186).
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays when you attach a trailer to your vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System (page 186).
Vehicle coming from left Vehicle coming from right	Displays when the system detects a vehicle. See Cross Traffic Alert (page 188).
Cross traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	~~Displays when the~~ The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See Cross Traffic Alert (page 188).
Cross traffic malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays when you attach a trailer to your vehicle. See Cross Traffic Alert (page 188).

Brake System

Message	Action
Check brake system	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Child Safety Locks

Message	Action
Child lock malfunction See manual	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise control not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 176).
Adaptive cruise control not available	Displays when the system is not available. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 176).
Adaptive cruise control malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise control Driver resume control	Displays if the system fails to fully operate. Take full control of your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Adaptive cruise control Speed too low to activate	Displays if you attempt to switch the system on when the vehicle speed is too low.
Adaptive cruise control Speed sign recognition not available	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield.
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility. Adaptive cruise control has switched to normal cruise control. You are responsible for controlling your vehicle and intervening if required.

Driver Alert

Message	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.

Engine

Message	Action
Engine coolant overtem- perature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Engine Coolant Check (page 235).

Fuel System

Message	Action
Fuel level low	Refuel as soon as possible.
Fuel level low distance metric:##0 km to empty Fuel level low distance imperial:##0 miles to empty	Refuel as soon as possible.
Check fuel fill inlet	Displays if the fuel fill inlet did not fully close. See Refueling (page 134).
Fuel pressure low	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Water in fuel Drain filter	Displays if the system detects there is excess water in the fuel filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action Displays when the system is operating. Displays when you switch the system off.
Hill start assist not avail- able	Displays when the system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Hill Start Assist (page 153).

Keyless Entry

Message	Action
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote key battery requires replacing.

Message	Action
	See Remote Control (page 36).
No key detected	Displays when the system cannot detect a valid key. See Keyless Entry (page 51). See Passive Key Backup Position (page 40).

Lighting

Message	Action
Check adaptive headlamps See manual	Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Brake fluid level low	Displays if the brake fluid level is low or if there is a brake system fault. Have your vehicle immediately checked. See Brake Fluid Check (page 236).
Engine oil level low Add oil	Displays if the engine oil level is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Immediately check the engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 233).
Engine oil pressure low	Displays if the engine oil pressure is low. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Immediately check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Change engine oil soon	Displays when the engine oil life is almost depleted. We recommend that you have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and your vehicle requires an oil change. Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and your vehicle requires an oil change.
Washer fluid level low	Displays when the washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled. See Washer Fluid Check (page 237).
Service tyre mobility kit	The tire pressure monitoring system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

MyKey

Message	Action
Create MyKey	Displays when you are programming a MyKey. See MyKey™ (page 41).
Hold OK to create MyKey	Displays when you are programming a MyKey. See MyKey™ (page 41).
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Place key in backup location	Displays when you are programming a MyKey and the key is not correctly positioned in the backup slot. See Passive Key Backup Position (page 40).
MyKey not created	Displays if the system fails to create a MyKey.
MyKey active Drive safely	Displays when MyKey is active. See MyKey™ (page 41).
Check speed Drive safely	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached. See MyKey™ (page 41).
Speed limited to my key limit metric:##0 km/h Speed limited to my key limit imperial:##0 mph	Displays when starting your vehicle, a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on. See MyKey™ (page 41).
Vehicle near top speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the vehicle speed approaches a preset speed limit. See MyKey™ (page 41).
MyKey Vehicle at top speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached. See MyKey™ (page 41).
Buckle up to unmute audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and seatbelt reminder is activated. See MyKey™ (page 41).
MyKey Park Pilot cannot be deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and you try to switch the parking aid system off. See MyKey™ (page 41).

Parking Aid

Message	Action
Park Pilot malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays when you switch the system on or off.
Check Park Pilot Check front Park Pilot Check rear Park Pilot	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual Front Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual Rear Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the ~~park pilot~~ system sensors are blocked. See Parking Aids (page 158).

Parking Brake

Message	Action
Park brake not applied Park brake not applied Apply park brake	Displays as a reminder to apply the parking brake.
Brake applied Power reduced Release park brake	Displays if you have not released the parking brake and the vehicle speed reaches 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning message remains on after you have released the parking brake, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Heater

Message	Action
Park heater not started Low fuel level	Displays if the park heater failed to operate due to low fuel level. Refuel as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	Displays when the pre-collision assist system sensors are blocked. See Pre-Collision Assist (page ?).

Seatbelt Reminder

Message	Action
Seatbelt status	Displays as a reminder to fasten the seatbelts.
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Occupant sensor blocked Remove objects near passenger seat	Displays when an object is placed on a passenger seat.

Selectable Drive Modes

Message	Action
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control

Message	Action
Shift malfunction Sport not available Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Starting System

Message	Action
Press brake to start	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 118).
Press clutch to start	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the clutch pedal. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 118).
Press brake and clutch to start	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake and clutch pedals. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 118).
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 118).
No key detected	Displays when the system cannot detect a valid key. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 118). See Passive Anti-Theft System (page 55).
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Passive Anti-Theft System (page 55).
Restart now or key is needed	Displays for 20 seconds if you switch the engine off and the system cannot detect a valid passive key. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key. See Push Button Ignition Switch (page 119).

Steering System

Message	Action
Steering lock Reinsert key while turning steering wheel	You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it. See Steering Wheel Lock (page 121).
Steering lock Turn steering wheel while starting vehicle	You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it. See Steering Wheel Lock (page 121).
Steering lock malfunction Service now Steering lock malfunction Stop safely	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	Immediately reduce the vehicle speed. You continue to have full steering but need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low Tyre pressure low Specified:	Displays if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct pressure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page ?).
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page ?).
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	Displays if the system detects a fault with a tire pressure sensor or the spare tire is in use. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page ?). If the warning message remains on after you have checked the tire pressures, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Transmission

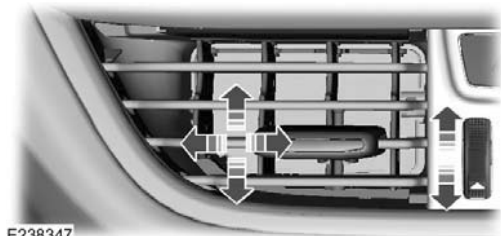
Message	Action
Transmission malfunction Service now Transmission Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission overtemperature Stop safely Transmission overheating Stop safely Transmission too hot Press brake	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow the transmission to cool.
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission warming up Please wait	Displays at low ambient temperatures if it takes a few seconds for the transmission to engage a gear. Fully press the brake pedal until the message disappears from the information display.
Ready to drive	Displays when your vehicle is ready to drive.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Press brake to unlock selector lever	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission. See Automatic Transmission (page ?).
Selector lever unlocked	Displays when the gearshift lever unlocks. See Automatic Transmission (page ?).

Vehicle Settings

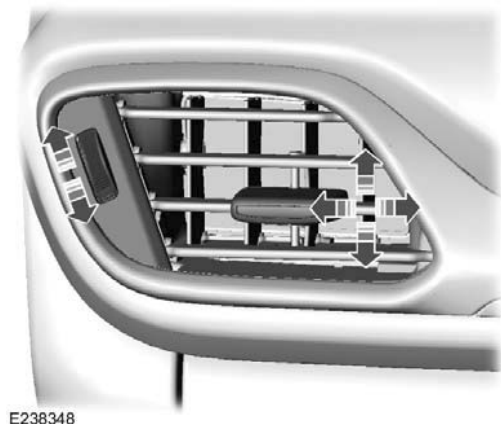
Message	Action
Transport mode Contact dealer	Your vehicle is in transport mode. Some features on your vehicle are not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIR VENTS (G1867596)

Center Air Vents



Side Air Vents



MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

(G1867581) **edited**

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



Note: *Recirculates- The air to reduce unwanted odors from entering currently in the vehicle- passenger compartment recirculates.*

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Turn the temperature control clockwise past the highest setting to the full heat position to maximize defrosting.

Note: *The temperature control springs back to the highest setting.*

Note: *When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on. The blower motor is set to the highest speed.*

Note: *When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.*

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off

MAX A/C Turn the temperature control counterclockwise to past the lowest setting to maximize cooling.

Note: The temperature control springs back to the lowest setting.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Adjusting Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Note: Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the fan blower motor speed.

Note: Changing- When you switch the Direction of AirflowDirects blower motor off, air through conditioning turns off and the windshield air vents. Directs air through the instrument panel air vents. Directs air through the footwell air vents. Adjusting windows could fog up.

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



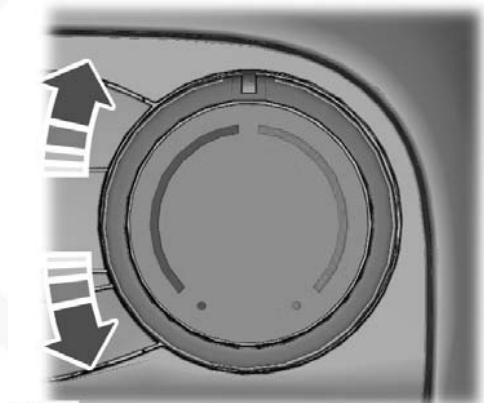
Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Setting the Temperature



E244106

You can adjust- Turn the temperature between 61–82°F (16–28°C) in small increments- control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL (G1867582) edited

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



Note: *Recirculates- The air to reduce unwanted odors from entering- currently in the vehicle- passenger compartment recirculates.*

Note: *Recirculated air could turn off or be prevented from turning on in all air flow modes except maximum cooling to reduce the risk of the windows fogging up. It could also turn on and off when you direct air to the instrument panel or footwell air vents during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.*

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Note: *When you switch maximum defrost on, the heated windshield, heated rear window and air conditioning turn on. The blower motor is set to the highest speed.*

Note: *When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.*

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off



Note: *When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.*

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



The system controls the blower motor speed and direction of airflow to reach and maintain the set temperature. Adjusting the Blower Motor Speed Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the fan speed. Changing the Direction of Airflow Directs air through the windshield air vents. Directs air through the instrument panel air vents. Directs air through the footwell air vents. Adjusting the Temperature You can adjust to reach and maintain the temperature between 60–85°F (15.5–29.5°C) in small increments- you have set.

Note: *When set to low temperatures, the system switches to permanent cooling. When set to high temperatures, the system switches to permanent heating- you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.*

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

Adjusting the Auto Mode



Repeatedly press to limit the maximum blower motor speed.

Note: *Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.*

Note: Limiting the blower motor speed increases the time taken to cool or heat the interior.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Note: Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



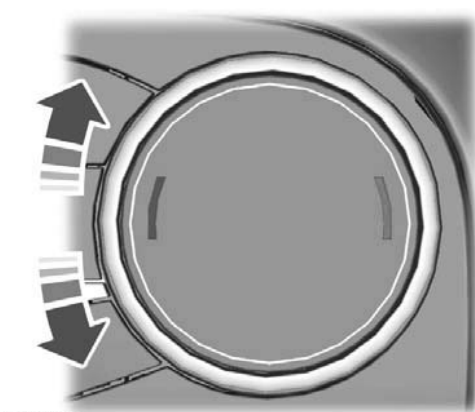
Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Setting the Temperature



E244115

Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

Note: You can adjust the temperature between 60–85°F (15.5–29.5°C).

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EATC) (G1885442) edited

General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open. When you select automatic mode and the ambient temperature is low and the engine is cold, airflow is directed to the windshield and side air vents. When you select automatic mode and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system selects recirculated air to maximize cooling. When the desired temperature is reached, recirculated air turns off. When you switch the system off, outside air is prevented from entering your vehicle. When you select maximum defrost, air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.*

Note: *When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature is low and the engine is cold, air is directed to the windshield and the outer instrument panel air vents.*

Note: *When you select automatic mode and the outside temperature and in-vehicle temperature is high, the system selects recirculated air to maximize cooling. When the required temperature is reached, recirculated air turns off.*

Note: *When you select maximum defrost, air conditioning turns on and airflow is not directed to the instrument panel and footwell windshield air. Quickly Heating the Interior Press AUTO. Select the highest temperature vents.*

Recommended Settings for Heating

- Press AUTO.
- Select the ~~desired~~ required temperature.

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Press MAX A/C.

Note: *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Press AUTO.
- Select the ~~desired~~ required temperature.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

Maximum Cooling Using Defogging or Clearing the Instrument Panel and Footwell Windshield of Thin Ice

- ~~Air Vents~~ Select the lowest temperature. Switch on the air conditioning and recirculated air. Select the highest blower motor speed and then adjust to suit comfort levels: maximum defrost.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EMTC) (G1885443) edited

General Hints

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with ~~the airflow~~ directing air to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid ~~weather,~~ weather conditions, direct ~~airflow~~ air to the windshield air vents.

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Quickly Heating the Interior

- Select the highest blower motor speed.
- Select the highest temperature.
- Direct ~~the airflow to the footwell~~ air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

- Select a ~~high~~ medium blower motor speed.
- Select the ~~desired~~ required temperature.
- Direct the airflow to the footwell and windshield ~~air~~ to the footwell and windshield air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Select maximum cooling.

Note: To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Select ~~the highest~~ a medium blower motor speed.
- Select the ~~desired~~ required temperature.
- Direct ~~the airflow to the instrument panel~~ air to the instrument panel air vents.
- Press A/C.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

Maximum Cooling Using Defogging or Clearing the Instrument Panel and Footwell Windshield of Thin Ice

- Air Vents Turn the temperature control counterclockwise to the lowest setting. Switch on the air conditioning and recirculated air. Select the highest blower motor speed and then adjust to suit comfort levels. maximum defrost.

HEATED WINDSHIELD (G1688416)

edited



Press the button to clear the ~~heated~~ windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield ~~automatically~~ turns off after a short period of time.

Note: ~~Start~~ Make sure that the engine is running before you ~~switch~~ switching the heated windshield on.

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

HEATED REAR WINDOW - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EATC) (G1878082) edited



Press the button to clear the ~~heated~~ rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window ~~automatically~~ turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure the engine is ~~running~~ on before operating the heated windows.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle Warranty ~~does~~ may not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

HEATED REAR WINDOW - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EMTC) (G1866812) edited



Press the button to clear the ~~heated~~ rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window ~~automatically~~ turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure the engine is ~~running~~ on before operating the heated windows.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle Warranty ~~does~~ may not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

(G1866813)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION (G1553331) edited

WARNINGS



Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.



Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, ~~safetybelt~~ seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30°.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the ~~safetybelt~~ seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS (G1910909)

WARNINGS



Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.



Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

Adjusting the Head Restraints

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.

2. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press the left-hand side locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.

Removing the Head Restraints

Front Head Restraints

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.

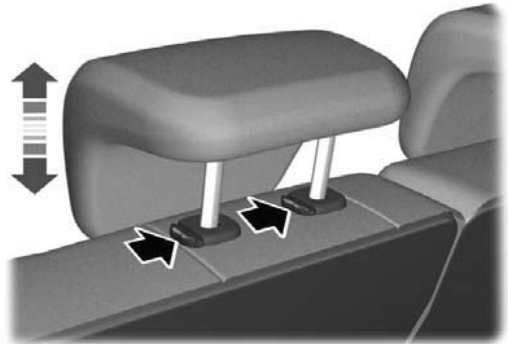


E251772

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Lift and remove the head restraint.

Rear Head Restraints

1. Fold the seat backrest forward so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E135401

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Lift and remove the head restraint.

MANUAL SEATS-3-DOOR (G1909185)

WARNINGS



Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.



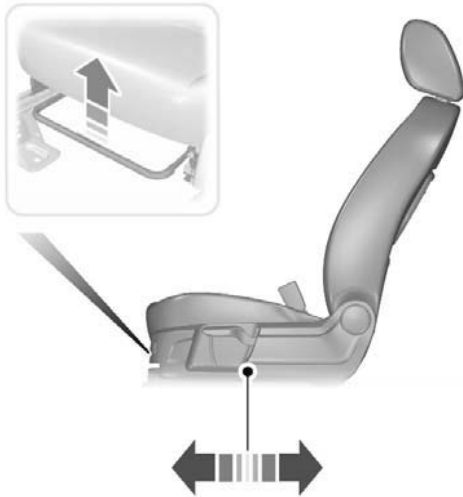
Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

WARNING



Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



E147926

Note: Do not move the seat backward and forward using the lever underneath the seat base unless the seat backrest is upright.

Folding the Seat Backrest Forward



E159979

1. Pull the lever to release the seat backrest.

Note: Do not hold onto the lever when moving the seat.

2. Fold the seat backrest fully forward.
3. Slide the seat forward.

Returning the Seat Backrest to the Seating Position



E159980

1. Push the seat backrest to slide the tilted seat to the end stop (memory position) or desired seating position.
2. Fold the seat backrest to the upright position.

Note: Make sure the seat base has been moved to the correct position before folding the seat backrest upright.

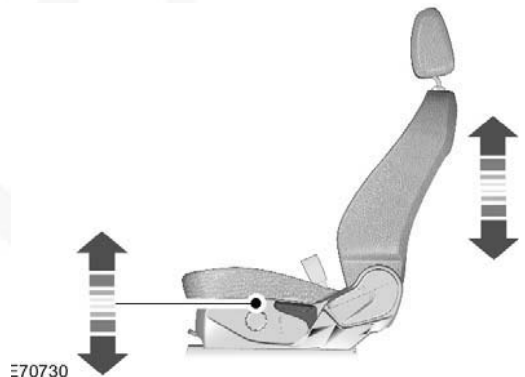
Note: You do not need to pull the lever when unfolding the seat backrest.

Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)



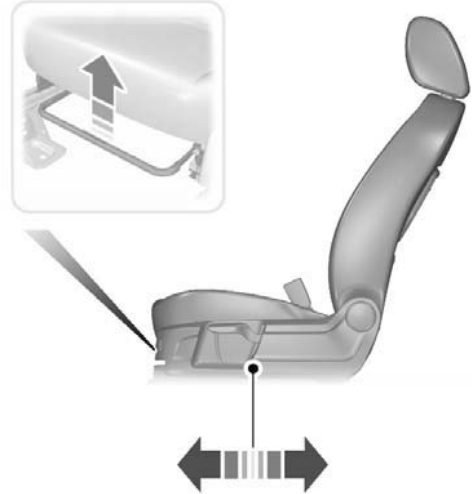
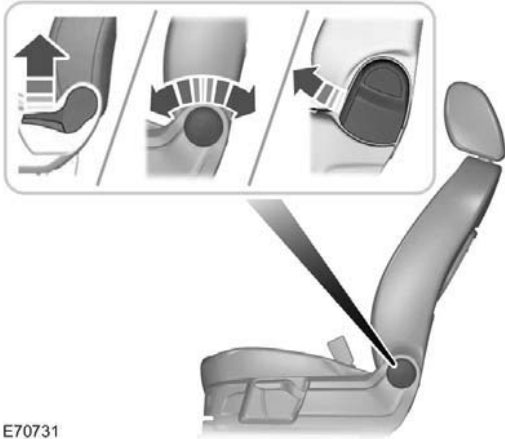
E249179

Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



E70730

Recline Adjustment



MANUAL SEATS - 5-DOOR (G1909186)

WARNING



Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

WARNING

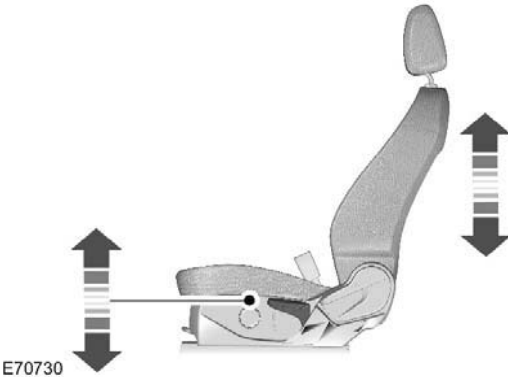


Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

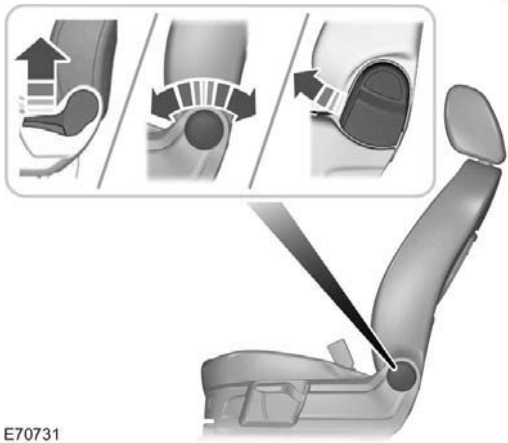
Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)



Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



Recline Adjustment



REAR SEATS (G1909499)

Folding the Seat Backrest

WARNING



When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

1. Lower the head restraints.



2. Press and hold the unlock buttons.
3. Push the seat backrest forward.

Note: Do not attempt to fold the rear seat cushion forward.



E249321

4. Place the seatbelts in the clips on the outermost trim.

Note: Make sure that the seatbelt is fully tightened into the retractor.

Unfolding the Seat Backrest

WARNINGS



When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

HEATED SEATS HEATED SEATS (G1936573) edited

WARNINGS



Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not switch the heated seat on if the seat is wet.

The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.



Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature.

(G1944778) **edited**

WARNINGS



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury. When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps. After you switch the ignition off, the power supply works only for a maximum of 75 minutes.

Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt- watts or a fuse may blow.

Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty. Always keep- Keep the power point caps closed when not in use. The power point works when the engine is running.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

You can use the power point for up to 75 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

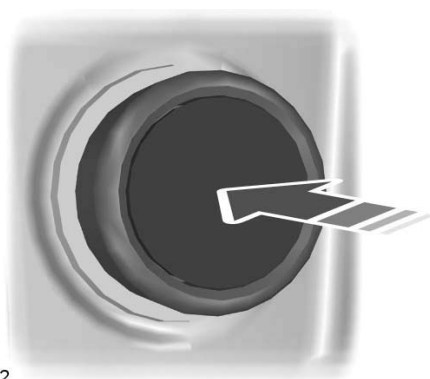
To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine- vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Power points may be found- in the following locations:

- On the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the console. In the luggage compartment. 230-Volt AC Power Point Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230-volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury. The power point works when the engine is running. You can use the power point for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.
- The power point indicator light, located on- Inside the power point, shows when the power point is ready for use. When the indicator light on the power point is: On - the power point is ready to supply power. Off - the power point power supply is off and so is the ignition. Flashing - the power point is in fault mode. The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150-watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the

fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on. Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including: Cathode ray tube type televisions. Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators. Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment. Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps. luggage compartment.



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

Note: If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

Note: If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

CIGAR LIGHTER (G1477648) edited

WARNING



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury. Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in. If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on. If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may lose charge. When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

Storage Compartments

CUP HOLDERS (G1477702)

Note: Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

WARNING



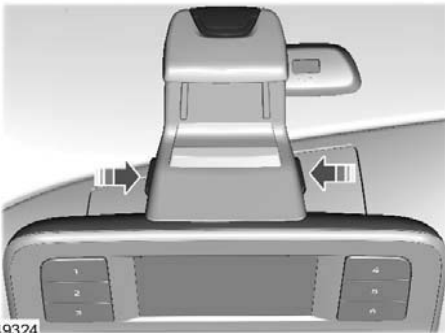
Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

DEVICE HOLDER (G1868739)

Installing the Device Holder

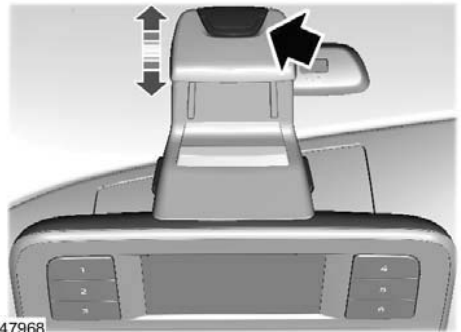
1. Remove the cap from the rear of the audio unit.
2. Attach the device holder to the rear of the audio unit and press down until a click sounds.

Removing the Device Holder



1. Press the locking buttons together and remove the device holder.
2. Attach the cap to the rear of the audio unit.

Installing a Device



1. Press the button to unlock the clamp.
2. Place the device on the lower rubber mat.
3. Adjust the lid to secure the device.
4. Press the button again to lock the clamp.

Note: Do not leave a device in the device holder when leaving your vehicle.

Removing a Device

1. Press the button to unlock the clamp.
2. Lift the lid.
3. Remove the device from the device holder.
4. Press the button again to lock the clamp.

GENERAL INFORMATION (G1448534)

WARNINGS

 Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

 Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH (G1518436) edited



E247596

Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

Note: Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH (G1869760) edited

WARNING



Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode



E144447

Press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the push button ignition switch again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to switch the ignition off.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: The ignition turns off if you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Note: A valid passive key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start ~~your vehicle.~~ the engine.

Starting ~~Your Vehicle.~~ The Engine

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully ~~depress~~ press the clutch pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: If you release the clutch pedal during engine starting, the engine stops cranking.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Fully ~~depress~~ press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: If you release the brake pedal during engine starting, the engine stops cranking.

Vehicles with a Diesel Engine

Note: The engine does not crank until the engine glow plug ~~warning lamp~~ indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start ~~your vehicle,~~ do the engine, do the following:

1. Insert the passive key into the backup slot. position. See **Passive Key Backup Position** (page ?).
2. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start ~~your vehicle.~~ the engine.

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank after you fully ~~depress the clutch pedal and~~ press the clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch, do the following:

1. ~~Fully depress both the clutch and~~ press the clutch pedal and the ~~brake pedals~~ pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

~~Briefly press~~ Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators turn off.*

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. ~~Fully depress~~ press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. ~~Briefly press~~ Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators turn off.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING



Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. ~~Briefly press~~ Press the push button ignition switch.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. ~~Briefly press~~ Press the push button ignition switch.

Fast Restart

The system allows you to ~~restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key. Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, fully depress the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it~~ the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system ~~does not detect a valid passive key.~~

When you start ~~your vehicle,~~ the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when ~~your vehicle~~ the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

Starting System Information Messages

Message	Action
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Press brake to start	Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal.
Press clutch to start	Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the clutch pedal.
Press brake and clutch to start	Displays when you start the engine as a reminder to fully press the brake and clutch pedals.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if the engine fails to start.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Restart now or key is needed	Displays for 10 seconds if you switch the engine off and the system does not detect a valid passive key. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Key Outside Vehicle Audible Warning

Sounds when you remove the passive key from your vehicle and the engine is running.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

(G1546401)

WARNING



Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

Locking the Steering Wheel

1. Remove the key from the ignition.

2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

(G1618558)

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that automatically operates.

The steering wheel will lock shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it or when you lock your vehicle.

Note: *The steering wheel will not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

(G1608041) **edited**

~~Cold or Hot Engine Switch~~ Before starting your vehicle, check the ignition following:

- ~~on~~ Make sure the headlamps and wait until the glow plug indicator turns electrical accessories are off.
- For vehicles with automatic transmission, fully press the Make sure the parking brake pedal. For vehicles with manual transmission, fully is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in neutral.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

- Turn the key to position .
- Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.
- Fully press the clutch ~~Start the engine.~~ pedal.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

- Releasing- Turn the brake or clutch pedal when the engine is starting stops the engine cranking and the ignition returns key to position .

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal when the engine is starting stops the engine cranking and the ignition returns to on.*

Note: *When the temperature is below 5°F (-15°C), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

Note: *You can only attempt to start the engine for a short period of time. After a limited number amount of attempts to start the engine, you cannot try again until a period of time elapses, for example 30 before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.*

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 119).

Failure to Start

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

If the engine does not start, do the following:

- For vehicles with automatic transmission, fully Fully press the brake pedal.
- For vehicles with manual transmission, fully press Apply the brake and clutch pedals parking brake.
- Shift into neutral.
- Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 119).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 119).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING



Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 119).

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING



Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (3 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Starting System Information Messages

Message	Action
Full accessory power active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

(G1477713)

Vehicles With a Turbocharger

WARNING



Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (If

Equipped) (G1752502)

WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

The heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

Note: *The heater is most effective when the ambient temperature is below 0°F (-18°C).*

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for outdoor use and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure you park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- Make sure you firmly connect the heater, heater cord and extension cord.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure you unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle.
- Make sure you check the heater system for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater plug is on the right-hand side of the front bumper. Open the hinged cover and make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry before use.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It reaches maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

AUTO-START-STOP AUTO-START-STOP - MANUAL TRANSMISSION (G1948553) edited

WARNING



Always switch the ignition off and fully apply the parking brake before carrying out any maintenance or leaving your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death if the engine restarts.

Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced starter motor that is designed for an increased number of engine starts.

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at high altitude.
- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If the engine is warming up.
- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.
- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you switch maximum defrost on.
- If you turn the steering wheel.

- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

Note: *On flex fuel vehicles, the system turns off for a short period of time after you have refueled. This is to allow the system to verify the fuel type.*

Note: *The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.*

Using Auto-Start-Stop

Stopping the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.*

Restarting the Engine

Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

Note: *The system provides stall recovery. To restart the engine after stalling, fully press the clutch pedal.*

Switching the System On and Off



The system turns on when you switch the ignition on. Press the switch to switch it off.

Note: *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



The auto-start stop indicator illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

Note: *The system turns off when it detects a malfunction. If it remains off, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Auto-Start-Stop Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and the system has stopped the engine.

Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine.

Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

AUTO-START-STOP AUTO-START-STOP (G1948552) edited

WARNING



Always switch the ignition off and fully apply the parking brake before carrying out any maintenance or leaving your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death if the engine restarts.

Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced starter motor that is designed for an increased number of engine starts.

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at high altitude.
- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If you have shifted into sport (S) or manual (M).
- If your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- If the engine is warming up.
- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.

- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.
- If you have turned the steering more than 270 degrees.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you switch maximum defrost on.
- If you turn the steering wheel.
- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

Note: *On flex fuel vehicles, the system turns off for a short period of time after you have refueled. This is to allow the system to verify the fuel type.*

Note: *The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.*

Using Auto-Start-Stop

WARNING



Apply the parking brake and shift into park (P) before leaving your vehicle.

Stopping the Engine

Stop your vehicle and keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops if you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) regardless of whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.*

Vehicles With Auto Hold

Note: *If auto hold is active, the system will not restart the engine if you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The system restarts the engine when you press the accelerator pedal.*

Restarting the Engine

- Release the brake pedal.
- Press the accelerator pedal.
- Shift into drive (D), reverse (R), neutral (N), manual (M) or sport (S).

Switching the System On and Off



The system turns on when you switch the ignition on. Press the switch to switch it off.

Note: **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



The auto-start stop indicator illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

Note: *The system turns off when it detects a malfunction. If it remains off, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.

Note: *It remains on until you switch it off.*

Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

EcoSelect Indicator



Illuminates when you switch EcoSelect on.

ECOSELECT (G1906297) edited

EcoSelect About EcoSelect

EcoSelect is a drive mode that achieves lower fuel consumption by reducing vehicle performance and climate comfort. EcoSelect allows your vehicle is designed to operate more efficiently. To switch on EcoSelect, press the ECO button near the audio unit. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle. reduce fuel consumption. It changes the way that some vehicle systems operate to make your vehicle more efficient.

When you switch on ECOSelect, an indicator appears in the information display. You drive with EcoSelect switched on, you could notice:

- Changes in engine behavior.
- Reduced acceleration performance.
- Reduced blower motor speed.
- No override function.

Switching EcoSelect On and Off



Press the button.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (G1448576)

WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE (G1477715)

edited

WARNINGS

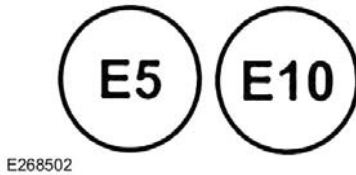


Do not mix ~~gasoline with oil,~~ diesel with gasoline, gasohol or other alcohol. ~~liquids.~~ This could cause ~~a chemical reaction,~~ an explosion.



Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: We recommend that you ~~use~~ only use high quality fuel. ~~The use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments are~~ We do not recommended. recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL (G1477716)

edited

WARNING



Do not mix kerosene, paraffin, oil, gasoline or other liquids with diesel. gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This ~~may~~ could cause a chemical reaction and engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



E268503

~~We recommend that you~~ Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. ~~The use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments are~~ We do not recommended. recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION (G1728199)

The fuel filler funnel is in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (G1809496)

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: *If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.*

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS



Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

WARNINGS



Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 131).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.



E157452

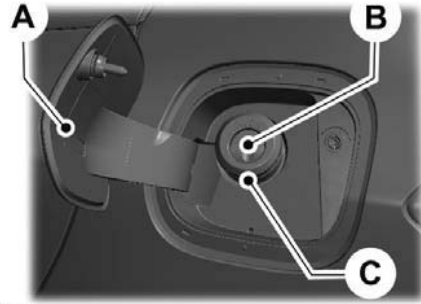
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.

6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

REFUELING (G1809497) edited

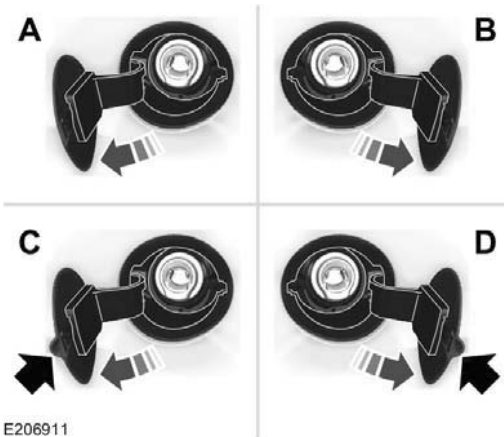
When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes. The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury. Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling. Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire. Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing. Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank. Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others. Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap. Refueling System Overview



E267248

- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel Fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release. door.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel Fuel tank filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release. valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



E206911

- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

WARNINGS



Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.



Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. ~~When you insert~~ Select the correct size fuel pump nozzle ~~a spring-loaded inhibitor opens~~ for your vehicle.

Refueling Your Vehicle

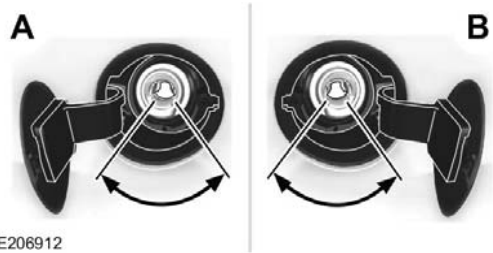
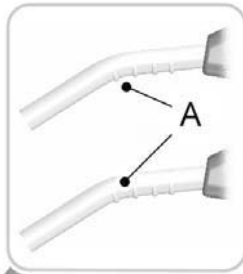
WARNINGS



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

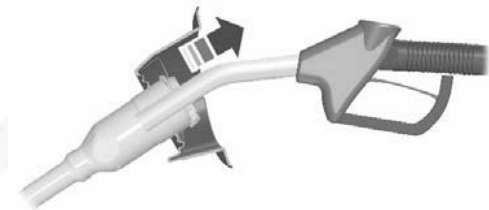


The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



E206912

5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

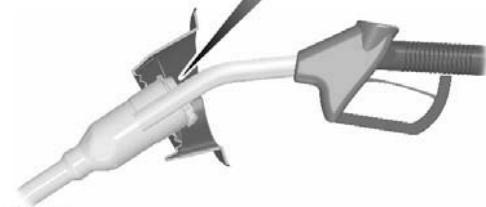
Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use ~~can~~ could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

System Warnings- Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler ~~inlet~~ valve does not fully ~~close~~ close, a ~~warning~~ message ~~appears~~ could appear in the information display.

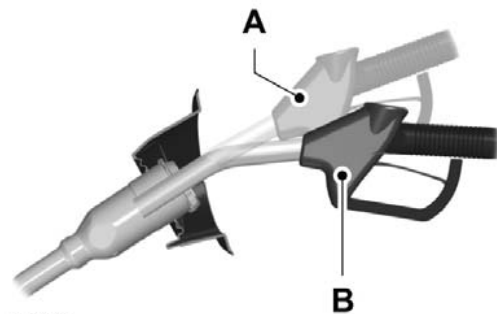
Message
Check fuel fill inlet

If the message appears, do the following:



E139202

3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it ~~resting on the cover of the~~ fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe opening- pipe.



E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler inlet and the area around it valve for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement.
6. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler inlet. This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel filler inlet. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 131). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: *If this action corrects the problem the message may not immediately reset. If the message remains continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

FUEL CONSUMPTION (G1944721) edited

We derive CO₂ and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing.

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 285).

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

Fuel Economy

~~Do not measure~~ Your vehicle calculates fuel economy during figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See **Trip Computer** (page ?).

The first ~~900 mi~~ 1,000 mi (1,500 km) of driving ~~as this~~ is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after ~~1,900 mi~~ 2,000 mi (3,000 km).

Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy. Completely fill the fuel tank and record the initial odometer reading. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading. Subtract
Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page ?).
- Fully loading ~~your initial~~ vehicle.
- ~~odometer reading from~~ Carrying unnecessary weight.
- ~~the current odometer reading. To calculate L/100 km (liters per 100 kilometers) fuel consumption, multiply the liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled. To calculate MPG (miles per gallon) fuel consumption, divide miles traveled by gallons used. Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving, for example city or highway. This provides an accurate estimate of~~ Adding certain accessories to ~~your vehicle's~~ fuel economy under current driving conditions. Keeping records during ~~summer~~ vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards ~~and winter shows~~ ski racks.
- ~~how temperature impacts~~ Using fuel economy: blended with alcohol. See **Fuel Quality** (page 131).
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER (G1876874)

edited

WARNINGS



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 212).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not use leaded fuel.

Note: Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction. Engine coolant temperature warning lamp. Ignition warning lamp. Malfunction indicator lamp. Service engine soon warning lamp.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER (G1970494)

edited

WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration

Particles in the exhaust gas collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles in the exhaust gas into harmless gases.

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Passive regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust gas temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

Note: When the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a message appears in the information display.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages

Message	Action
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean	• Drive at moderate to high speed on a main road or highway. • Regularly take your foot off the accelerator pedal. • Drive for 20 minutes or until the message disappears. • Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions. • Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	• Drive at a moderate speed. • Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration. • Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

(G1876876) **edited**

WARNINGS



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a diesel particulate filter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. It filters harmful diesel particulates, for example soot from the exhaust gas.

To avoid damaging the diesel particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 212).

- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps or information messages regarding exhaust system cleaning and regeneration.

Note: ~~Resulting component~~ This could result in damage ~~may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.~~

On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this ~~may indicate~~ indicates that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Engine coolant temperature warning lamp.



Ignition warning lamp.



Malfunction indicator lamp.



Powertrain warning Lamp.



Water in fuel warning lamp.

~~Continuing~~ If you continue to drive your vehicle ~~may cause reduced power or~~ when the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp ~~may cause component~~ is illuminated, the engine could stop without warning. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration

WARNINGS



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The

regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain correct operation. The emission control system automatically carries out this process. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot that gathers inside the filter is cleaned in two different ways, passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver. During automatic regeneration, the system cleans the diesel particulate filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning happens during normal engine operating conditions at varying levels depending on driving conditions.



Diesel particulate filter warning lamp.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, the warning lamp appears advising you to drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning. Depending on vehicle options and instrument cluster type fitted, a warning lamp or information message may appear with the warning lamp. Failure to carry out appears in the information display. Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning.

The warning lamp continues to illuminate until the automatic regeneration process completes. Continue to drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning until the warning lamp turns off.

Failure to carry out regeneration when required may result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, the system disables the ability to carry out regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage to the diesel particulate filter resulting in component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Where vehicle use meets any of the following conditions:

- Driving short distances.
- Prolonged engine idling.
- Frequently switching the engine on and off.
- High levels of acceleration and deceleration.

We recommend you assist the regeneration process by:

- Avoiding prolonged engine idling.
- ~~Driving~~ Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning. ~~Overtime~~ diesel particulates build up in the diesel particulate filter that are not removed during the regeneration process. The filter may need to be removed for cleaning. Drive at a steady vehicle speed of 30 mph (48 km/h) or above for approximately 120,000 mi (195,000 km), 20 minutes.



actual mileage can greatly vary depending on engine and vehicle operating conditions. The diesel particulate filter may require replacing at approximately 250,000 mi (400,000 km) depending on engine and vehicle operating conditions. In both cases a If the warning lamp illuminates to inform you to the diesel particulate filter could have become overloaded. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the soot particles. During cleaning soot particles are converted to harmless gasses. Once cleaned the diesel particulate filter continues to trap harmful diesel particles.

If you are driving your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning, the information display shows a message to indicate that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to indicate automatic regeneration is in progress.

If you are not driving your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning, the information display shows a message to suggest that you allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to instruct you to drive in a manner to allow that allows automatic regeneration.

The automatic regeneration process is most effective when you drive at a steady vehicle speed of 30 mph (48 km/h) or above for approximately 20 minutes. The frequency and duration of the regeneration process varies by how you drive your vehicle, the outside air temperature and altitude. Frequency varies between 100 mi (160 km) and 310 mi (500 km) and each regeneration process lasts between 10 and 20 minutes.

Note: ~~You may hear changes~~ Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Note: ~~You may smell a hot metallic odor or you may hear a clicking metallic sound during the regeneration process~~ During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you could smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.

Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The

regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation

WARNINGS

catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.



Diesel particulate filter warning lamp.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, the warning lamp appears advising you to initiate diesel particulate filter manual regeneration. Depending on vehicle options and instrument cluster type fitted, a warning message may appear with the warning lamp.

Before you start manual regeneration, do the following:

- Park your vehicle outside of any enclosed structure.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Park your vehicle a minimum of 10 ft (3 m) from any obstructions and materials that can easily combust or melt, for example, paper, leaves, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 3.2 gal (12 L) of fuel in the fuel tank.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the engine coolant level.

Manual Regeneration

Where vehicle use has significant engine idle operation, frequent vehicle speed less than 25 mph (40 km/h), or driving short distances where the engine does not fully warm up, manual regeneration allows you to start diesel particulate filter cleaning when the engine is idling.

Use the manual regeneration feature when:

- You are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic cleaning. See **Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration**.
- You choose to manually start the regeneration process when the engine is idling.

Note: ~~You may hear changes~~ Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Note: ~~You may smell a hot metallic odor or you may hear a clicking metallic sound during the regeneration process~~ During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.

Starting Manual Regeneration

You can only start manual regeneration with the engine running at normal operating temperature using the information display. ~~Opening the hood is not necessary~~ See **Information Messages** (page 89).

Note: During the use of manual regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.

Note: If you press any pedal during manual regeneration the engine ~~turns~~ may turn off. To protect the exhaust system you ~~cannot~~ may not be able to restart the engine for 10 minutes.



If a warning illuminates you may not be able to start manual regeneration.

To start manual regeneration, from the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button or the right arrow button.
Exhaust filter full Clean soon	Press the OK button or the right arrow button.
Select one of the following:	
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	Press the OK button or the right arrow button. Follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as required to start manual regeneration. Make sure you understand each prompt. The information display confirms that regeneration has started and when it is completed.
Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now	Press the OK button or the right arrow button. Follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as required to start manual regeneration. Make sure you understand each prompt. The information display confirms that regeneration has started and when it is completed.

Note: You cannot use the manual regeneration until the diesel particulate filter load percentage has reached 100 percent. The diesel particulate filter load percentage fluctuates when driving due to automatic regeneration.

When you start manual regeneration the engine speed rises to approximately 2000–2500 rpm and the cooling fan speed increases. A change in engine noise due to the cooling fan and engine speed increase may be heard during the regeneration process.

Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, the regeneration process varies depending on the outside air temperature and altitude. Manual regeneration may last up to 40 minutes.

When manual regeneration is complete the cooling fan and engine speed return to normal idling. The exhaust system remains very hot for several minutes after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool.

Interrupt or Cancel Manual Regeneration

You can interrupt or cancel manual regeneration by pressing any pedal or by switching the engine off. It may be possible to interrupt or cancel manual regeneration by pressing any pedal.

Note: To protect the exhaust system you cannot may not be able to restart the engine for 10 minutes.

Depending on the amount of time allowed for manual regeneration to operate, soot may not have had sufficient time to be eliminated. The exhaust system may still be very hot for several minutes after regeneration.

If you switch the engine off during manual regeneration, turbo charger flutter occurs. This is a consequence of switching a diesel engine off during turbo charger boost operation, which is normal.

Manual Regeneration with Automatic Regeneration Control

Where vehicle use has significant engine idle operation, frequent vehicle speed less than 25 mph (40 km/h), or driving short distances where the engine does not fully warm up, automatic regeneration ~~may~~ could not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter. You can switch automatic regeneration off until you can drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning, for example at a steady vehicle speed of 30 mph (48 km/h) or above for approximately 20 minutes. You can then switch automatic regeneration back on to clean the diesel particulate filter.

To switch the automatic regeneration control on and off, from the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Information	Press the OK button or the right arrow button.
Driver assist	Press the OK button or the right arrow button.
Auto exhaust cleaning off	Check the box to switch automatic regeneration off. Uncheck the box to switch automatic regeneration on.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION MANUAL TRANSMISSION - 5- SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION (G1939965) edited

General Information

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

If any gear is not fully engaged, fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Shifting Into Reverse Gear

Do not shift into reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral before shifting into reverse gear.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION - 6- SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION (G1950186) edited

Authoring Template General Information

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

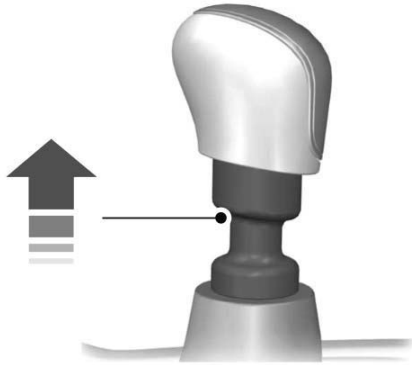
Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

If any gear is not fully engaged, fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Shifting Into Reverse Gear

Do not shift into reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



E99067

3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

(G1964353) edited

WARNING



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Positions

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

Park (P)

In Park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the transmission in this position.

Note: A warning tone sounds if you open the driver door without shifting to park (P).

Reverse (R)

Do not shift to reverse (R) when your vehicle is moving.

Always come to a complete stop before shifting out of reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

In Neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine in neutral (N).

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy and smoothness. Shift into drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission shifts to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on driving conditions and your input.

Sport Mode (S)

Sport mode (S) typically performs in lower gears than drive (D) and the shifts are faster. Shift into sport (S) to allow the transmission to select the optimum gear for best performance.

Sport mode remains on until either you shift manually up or down or select drive (D).

Note: In sport mode the transmission operates as normal but gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

SelectShift™

This feature permits gear changes to be made by the driver as desired.

Using SelectShift™

As long as the engine speed is below the maximum allowable limit, downshifts are allowed. SelectShift automatically downshifts at low engine speeds to prevent engine stalls.

Note: *Engine damage could occur if you maintain excessive engine speed without shifting up.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching its speed limit, unless the accelerator pedal is at full travel. Take notice of the shift indicator lamp, which alerts you when to shift to achieve highest efficiency and fuel economy.

Note: *If equipped with gearshift toggle, press the + toggle to switch SelectShift on. Press the + or - buttons to upshift or downshift.*

Note: *If equipped with steering wheel paddles, pull the + paddle on the steering wheel to switch SelectShift on. Pull the right + or - paddle to upshift or downshift.*



E144821

SelectShift in drive (D):

Provides temporary manual control of the gear selection when more detailed response is required, for example, when towing or overtaking. This mode holds a selected gear for a short time, dependent on driver input, for example, steering wheel or accelerator pedal input.

SelectShift in sport (S):

Provides manual gear selection without time limitation.

To exit SelectShift mode:

In drive (D), move the selector to sport (S) then back to drive (D).

In sport (S), move the selector to drive (D) then back to sport (S).

Note: *When you fully press the accelerator pedal, the transmission may automatically downshift for maximum performance.*

Note: *In low traction conditions, you can move the vehicle away in second gear using SelectShift.*

Kickdown

Fully press the accelerator pedal with transmission in the drive (D) position to select the next lowest gear for optimum performance. Release the accelerator pedal when you no longer require kickdown.

Brake-Shift Brake Shift Interlock

About Brake Shift Interlock

Brake shift interlock prevents you from shifting out of park (P) when you have switched the ignition on and not pressed the brake pedal.

Shifting Out of Park (P)

WARNINGS



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working. When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

WARNINGS



If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake-shift interlock prevents shifting from park (P) when the ignition is on but the brake pedal is not pressed. Brake Shift Interlock Manual Override If you cannot shift out of park (P) with the ignition on and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction could have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. If the brake lamps are working properly, the following steps allow you to move the transmission temporarily out of park (P): Remove transmission side panel. Locate access hole and insert a screwdriver or similar tool. Press the interlock lever forward. When pressing the transmission lever button, move shifter out of park. Remove tool and reinstall the panel. Start your to move the selector lever out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

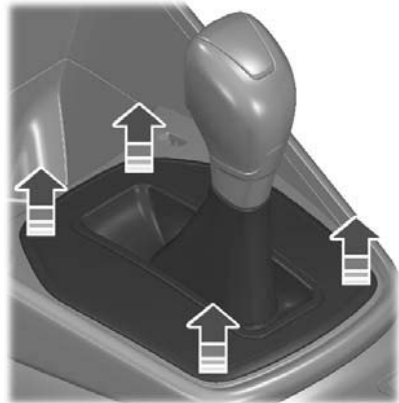
In the event of an electrical malfunction, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the stoplamps are not working. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 215).

If the vehicle and release the parking brake. These steps have to be repeated when the shifter is locked back in park (P). Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. For some markets battery has no charge, jump start your vehicle. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 212).

WARNING

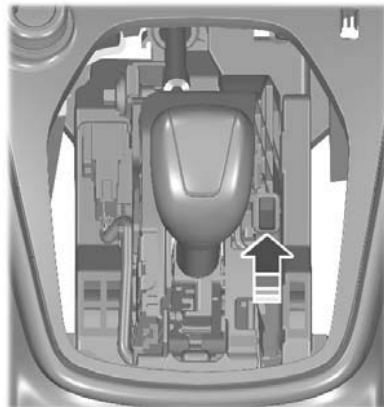


When doing this feature is disabled procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.



E269819

1. Remove the panel.



E269821

2. Locate the access hole.

3. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, push the brake shift interlock lever toward the front of your vehicle and hold it there.
4. Move the selector lever from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Install the panel.
6. Press the brake pedal, start the engine and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature could increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission could have firm or soft shifts or both. This is normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you can rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission could occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires could occur, or the engine could overheat.*

Brakes

GENERAL INFORMATION (G1526280)

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 251).

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System (If Equipped)

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES (G1448584)

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION (G1521671)

WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Brakes

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

(G1448585)

WARNING



Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking brake lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button when pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

To release the parking brake:

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

HILL START ASSIST (G1644165)

WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.



You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary on a slope for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

Brakes

Note: *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. The system activates if the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for a few seconds. This hold time increases if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Pull away in the normal manner.

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

(G1448586)

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

Note: The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Note: When you switch the system on or off, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster. It also illuminates if the system activates or if the system detects a malfunction. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

USING TRACTION CONTROL

(G1913042) **edited**

WARNING



The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Switching the System On and Off



Press the button on the center console. You can also switch the system on or off using the information display.

Note: When you switch the traction control off, stability control remains on.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

(G1477729)

Electronic Stability Control

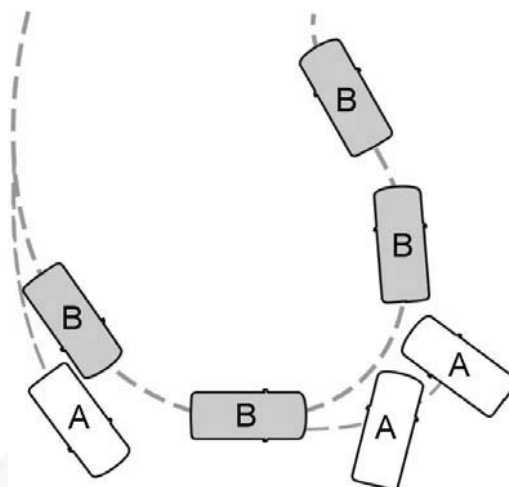
WARNING



The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system does this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This helps to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.



E72903

A Without ESC.

B With ESC.

Stability Control Warning Lamp



Flashes during operation. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

USING STABILITY CONTROL - EXCLUDING: ST

(G1477730)

Note: The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the traction control system off and on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 155).

USING STABILITY CONTROL USING STABILITY CONTROL - ST (G1932667) edited

WARNING



Do not switch off stability control or use Sport, Track or Drift mode when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Reducing Stability Control



Press the button on the center console. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

Note: *Stability control only reduces and is not fully switched off.*

Note: *If you switch stability control to reduced mode, traction control turns off.*

Switching the System Off



Press and hold the button on the center console for a few seconds to switch the system off. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

Note: *If you switch stability control off, traction control also turns off.*

Note: *If you use a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the system off.*

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the system off or to reduced mode. It also illuminates if you select track mode.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

(G1477731)

WARNINGS

 To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system. This may include reduced performance or a false activation.

 Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

 Only use the Ford approved trailer wiring kit (including the trailer wiring module) when towing with your vehicle. Using generic trailer wiring kits may prevent the correct operation of the rear parking sensors (where fitted) and could damage the electrical systems of your vehicle.

 The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

 The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Note: If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 8 in (20 cm).

Note: If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.

Note: Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

Note: The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.

Note: The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measure of obstacles or false alerts.

REAR PARKING AID (G1973543) edited

WARNINGS

 The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

 The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNINGS



The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

If the system detects malfunctions, a fault warning message appears in the information display.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover up the sensors.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Note: Some add-on accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when an object approaches your vehicle. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the center of the rear bumper.

Note: There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.



E130178

Sensor coverage area is up to 70 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

The system detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed.

If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: If the detected object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the rear bumper, the audible warning does not turn off.

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides object distance indication through the information display.

Parking Aids (If Equipped) edited

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

Rear Parking Aid Information Messages

Message	Description
Park Pilot malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check rear Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Rear Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FRONT PARKING AID (G1973544) edited

WARNINGS



The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNINGS



The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The sensors are on the front bumper.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover up the sensors.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

The sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when an object approaches your vehicle. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

The system turns off when the vehicle speed reaches 5 mph (8 km/h).



E187330

Sensor coverage area is up to 28 in (70 cm) from the center of the bumper.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the system detects objects when your vehicle is moving at low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds.

If the transmission is in any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and an object is within the detection area. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds and the visual warning turns off after four seconds.



Press the parking aid button to switch the system off.

If the system detects malfunctions, a ~~fault a warning~~ message appears in the information display and you cannot switch the system on. display.

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audio warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving and the detected object is moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audio warnings stop after two seconds. Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audio warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audio warnings stop after two seconds and visual indication stops after four seconds.

Note: *If the detected object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or below, for example, your vehicle is moving on a

slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication stops after four seconds.

Front Parking Aid Information Messages

Message	Description
Park Pilot malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SIDE SENSING SYSTEM (G1867958) edited

The system uses the front and rear outermost parking aid sensors to detect objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system displays them on a virtual map in the information display as your vehicle moves past them.

Note: The system does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear sensor.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover up the sensors.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Note: If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

The system may not function if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on within a few seconds.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.

To reinitialize the system you may have to drive your vehicle approximately 10 ft (3 m).



E190458

Coverage area is up to 24 in (60 cm) from the side of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle an audible warning sounds. As the object moves closer to your vehicle, the rate of the tone increases.

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



E190459

The system provides object distance indication through in the information display.

- The indicator displays: As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides visual distance indication when objects are detected within 24 in (60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns warnings and visual indication when detected objects are within 24 in (60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds.

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides visual distance indication when the audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle speed is 7 mph (12 km/h) or less and objects are detected within 24 in (60 cm) inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the audible warning turns off after two seconds and the visual distance indication stops after four seconds. If the object remains within 6–24 in (15–60 cm) visual distance indication remains on. When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual distance indication if objects are detected within 6 in (15 cm) and the vehicle speed is 7 mph (12 km/h) or less, for example when moving on at a slope. When you stop your vehicle the visual distance indication stops speed of 7 mph (12 km/h) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds and visual indication turns off after four seconds.

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of 7 mph (12 km/h) or below, for example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (G1867959)

edited

WARNINGS



You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention. Active Park Assist is a multi-step process and may require you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until you complete the parking maneuver. If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any for controlling your vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system by grabbing the steering wheel, or by taking full control of your vehicle after pressing the Active Park Assist button. Keep your hands, hair, clothing and any loose items clear of the steering wheel when using Active Park Assist. The Blind Spot Information System does not detect traffic alongside or behind your vehicle during at

WARNINGS

all times. The system is designed to be an Active Park Assist maneuver. aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Active park assist is a multi-step process and may require you to shift the transmission multiple times. Follow the onscreen instructions until the parking maneuver is complete.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system by grabbing the steering wheel, or by taking full control of your vehicle after pressing the active park assist button.

Keep your hands, hair, clothing and any loose items clear of the steering wheel when using active park assist.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover up the sensors.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves. The sensors may falsely detect objects due to ultrasonic interference caused by, for example motorcycle exhausts, truck air brakes or horns.

Note: If you change any tires, the system must recalibrate and may not correctly operate for a short time.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire that is significantly worn more than the other tires.
- One or more tires are incorrectly inflated.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space. For example, a pedestrian or cyclist.
- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground. For example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck.
- The weather conditions are poor. For example, during heavy rain, snow, fog, high humidity and high temperatures.

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached an add-on accessory close to the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, a bike rack or trailer.
- You have attached an overhanging object to the roof. For example, a surfboard.
- The front bumper, rear bumper or the side sensors are damaged.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle. For example, a mini-spare tire.

Using Active Park Assist

Selecting an Active Park Assist Mode



Press the button once to activate parallel parking. Press the button a second time to activate perpendicular parking. If you press the button again the system switches off.

~~When~~ If your vehicle is moving, or your vehicle is stationary having moved approximately 33 ft (10 m) after you switch the ignition on, you can use the information parked and entertainment after you switch the ignition on, you can use the information display to toggle between parallel parking, perpendicular parking and system off through the modes. There is no time limit for toggling between parallel parking and perpendicular parking, for example parking space layout changes from parallel parking to perpendicular parking. When your vehicle is stationary after completing a parallel park assist maneuver, or after you switch the ignition on, ~~press~~ Press the button once to activate Parallel Park Out Assist. This system is switch the system on and open the system menu in the information display.

Note: *If your vehicle is parked, the default mode is parallel park out assist. However if you did ~~not intended to~~ use active park assist when exiting a perpendicular parking space, to parallel park your vehicle, use the information display to select park out assist.*

Note: *You can only repeatedly press the active park assist button to toggle through the modes after moving your vehicle approximately 33 ft (10 m).*

To toggle through the modes, use the buttons on the information display to select the following:

- Parallel parking.
- Perpendicular parking.
- Parallel park out assist.
- Switch the system off.

Note: *There is no time limit for toggling through the modes.*

Parallel Parking

The system detects available parallel parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a parallel parking space.



Press the button once to search for a parallel parking space.

Note: You can also switch the system on after you have already driven partially or completely past a parking space. Press the *Active-Park* active park assist button and the system informs you if you have recently passed a suitable parking space.

When the vehicle speed is less than 22 mph (35 km/h), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to be offered parking spaces on either the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

Note: The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.

Note: The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.



Drive your vehicle approximately 3 ft (1 m) and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: If you drive your vehicle less than 2 ft (0.5 m) or greater than 5 ft (1.5 m) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

Note: The system always offers the last parking space it detects. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.

Note: If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.

Automatically Steering into a Parallel Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

Note: If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (9 km/h), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

Note: If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the Active Park Assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

Note: You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

Brake System Intervention The Active Park Assist brake intervention feature does not relieve you of your responsibility to control your vehicle at all times. If the warning lamp appears bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

The detection of objects and activation of the brake intervention system depends on certain conditions. For example vehicle load, adverse weather conditions or other conditions that may affect the system sensors.

When Active Park Assist active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

- The brakes may be applied at a vehicle speed of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h). This feature attempts to keep the vehicle speed within the limits for assisted parking. Brake system intervention to slow your vehicle does not cancel the Active Park Assist active park assist maneuver.
- The brakes may be applied if an obstacle is detected within the intended vehicle path. Brake system intervention may bring the vehicle to a complete stop and may decrease the effects of a crash. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the brakes can remain applied for a short period of time. If this feature activates, it cancels the Active Park Assist active park assist maneuver and you must take full control of your vehicle to complete the parking maneuver.

Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above 22 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds when searching for a parallel parking space.
- Driving above 31 mph (50 km/h).
- Driving above 6 mph (9 km/h) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If the system detects malfunctions, a malfunction, a warning message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Perpendicular Parking

The system detects available perpendicular parking spaces and steers your vehicle into the space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you into a perpendicular parking space.



Press the button twice to search for a perpendicular parking space.

When the vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h), the system scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. A message and a graphic appear in the information display to indicate the system is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to be offered parking spaces on either the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

Note: The system scans both sides of your vehicle and offers parking spaces one side at a time if you do not use the direction indicator.

Note: The system defaults to the passenger side if you do not use the direction indicator.



Drive your vehicle approximately 3 ft (1 m) and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: If you drive your vehicle less than 2 ft (0.5 m) or greater than 5 ft (1.5 m) away from other parked vehicles, the system may not be able to detect an available parking space.

When the system detects a suitable space, a message displays and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the onscreen instructions. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may have to move forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

Note: The system always offers the last detected parking space. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces when you are driving, it offers the last one.

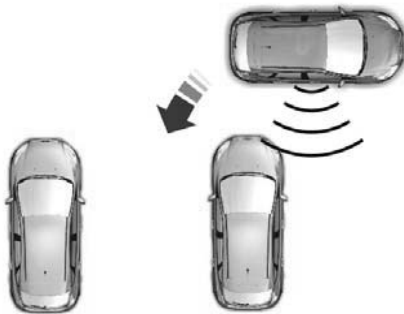
Note: If the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 19 mph (30 km/h), the system shows a message to instruct you to reduce the vehicle speed.

Automatically Steering into a Perpendicular Parking Space

When you shift into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

Note: If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (9 km/h), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

Note: *If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.*



E186191

When you believe your vehicle is correctly parked, or a solid tone sounds and an information message appears, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the ~~Active Park Assist~~ active park assist maneuver is complete, a tone sounds and ~~an information~~ a message appears.

Note: *You are responsible for checking how your vehicle is parked and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.*

Brake System Intervention The Active Park Assist brake intervention feature does not relieve you of your responsibility to control your vehicle at all times. If the warning lamp appears bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

The detection of objects and activation of the brake intervention system depends on certain conditions. For example vehicle load, adverse weather conditions or other conditions that may affect the system sensors.

When ~~Active Park Assist~~ active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

- The brakes may be applied at a vehicle speed of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h). This feature attempts to keep the vehicle speed within the limits for assisted parking. Brake system intervention to slow your vehicle does not cancel the ~~Active Park Assist~~ active park assist maneuver.
- The brakes may be applied if an obstacle is detected within the intended vehicle path. Brake system intervention may bring the vehicle to a complete stop and may decrease the effects of a crash. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the brakes can remain applied for a short period of time. If this feature activates, it cancels the ~~Active Park Assist~~ active park assist maneuver and you must take full control of your vehicle to complete the parking maneuver.

Deactivating Active Park Assist

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above ~~22 mph (35 km/h)~~ 19 mph (30 km/h) for 30 seconds when searching for a ~~parallel~~ parking space.
- Driving above 31 mph (50 km/h).
- Driving above 6 mph (9 km/h) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates or fails.
- The anti-lock brake system activates or fails.

If a problem occurs with the system, system malfunctions, a warning message appears and a tone sounds. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parallel Park Out Assist

The system steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space. You control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you out of a parallel parking space.

Note: This system is not intended to assist when exiting a perpendicular parking space.



Press the button once when your vehicle is stationary in a parallel parking space.

Note: If you did not use active park assist to parallel park your vehicle, pressing the button once selects parallel park. You must use the information display to select park out assist.

The system displays a message instructing you to switch a direction indicator on. Use the direction indicator to select which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.

Note: If the system detects an object is very close to your vehicle and it may be unsafe to continue the maneuver, it may instruct you to stop your vehicle. The system may not provide any further instruction. Steering assistance continues to operate but you must decide if it is safe to continue the maneuver.



After the system directs your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle. Generally hand-over is when your vehicle is still inside the parking space.

Note: Parallel Park Out Assist may not be available when the clearance to the front or the rear of your vehicle is too small.

Note: If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (9 km/h), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle.

Note: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle and making sure the path is clear prior to pulling into traffic.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (9 km/h), you interrupt the maneuver, or the system switches off, you must take full control of your vehicle. Troubleshooting the Brake System Intervention

The detection of objects and activation of the brake intervention system depends on certain conditions. For example vehicle load, adverse weather conditions or other conditions that may affect the system sensors.

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

- The brakes may be applied if an obstacle is detected within the intended vehicle path. Brake system intervention may bring the vehicle to a

complete stop and may decrease the effects of a crash. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the brakes can remain applied for a short period of time. If this feature activates, it cancels the active park assist maneuver and you must take full control of your vehicle to complete the parking maneuver.

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not search for a parking space.	You may have switched the traction control off.
	The transmission is in reverse (R).Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	The sensors may be blocked.For example, snow, ice or dirt buildup.Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
	There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
	There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
	The parking space is more than 5 ft (1.5 m) or less than 2 ft (0.5 m) away.
	The vehicle speed is greater than 22 mph (35 km/h) for parallel parking or greater than 19 mph (30 km/h) for perpendicular parking.
	You recently disconnected or replaced the battery.After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.
The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space.	Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the current transmission position.For example, rolling forward when in reverse (R).
	An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
	Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.
	Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.

Symptom	Possible Cause
	The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained.For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
	A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.
	A parked vehicle has a high attachment.For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
	The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
	The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes.For example, driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash.

REAR VIEW CAMERA (G1867960)

WARNINGS

 The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

 Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 Reverse your vehicle slowly.Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 Use caution when the liftgate is ajar.If the liftgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect.All guidelines disappear when the liftgate is ajar.Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

WARNINGS

 The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.

 To help avoid personal injury always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the rear view camera.

The rear view camera provides an image of the area behind your vehicle. During operation, lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.



The camera is on the liftgate.

Using the Rear View Camera

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

Rear View Camera Guidelines

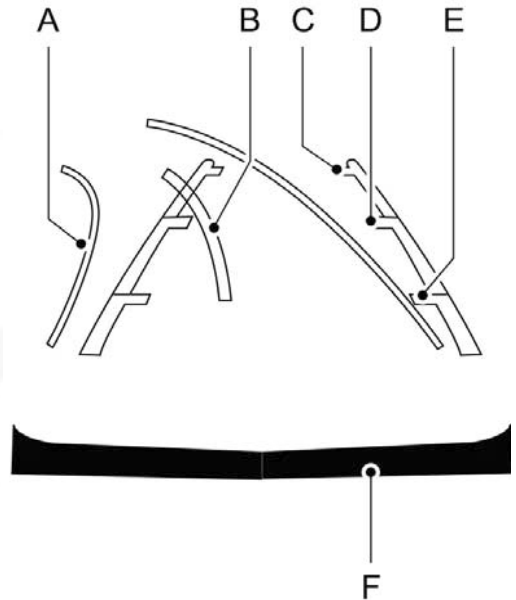
WARNING



Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 31 mph (50 km/h).

The system uses three types of guidelines to help you see what is behind your vehicle:



E142436

- A Active guidelines. Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- B Centerline. Helps you align the center of your vehicle with a trailer.
- C Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Green zone.
- D Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Yellow zone.

- E Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guidelines are only available with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position when reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

Note: *Guidelines do not display if the liftgate is open.*

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. When the steering wheel position is straight the active guidelines do not display. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further from your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Press the zoom in or zoom out symbol to change the view.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when you shift into reverse (R).*

Note: *The rear bumper remains in the image as a reference point.*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you switch on manual zoom.*

System Settings

You can adjust the camera settings using the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 366).

Rear View Camera Delay

You can switch this feature on or off using the touchscreen. The default setting is off. See **Settings** (page 366).

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

Enhanced Parking Aids or Park Pilot (If Equipped)

You can switch this feature on or off using the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 366).

When the reverse sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green indicators at the top of the image.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

(G1448594)

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL (G1868749)

edited

WARNINGS



Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Your vehicle speed could decrease below the set speed when driving uphill. To help the system to maintain the set speed when going uphill, downshift to a lower gear.

Note: *The system cancels if your vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (16 km/h) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

To help the system to maintain the set speed when going downhill, downshift to a lower gear.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching the System On



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the information display.

Switching the System Off

Press and release the cruise control icon, when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

Setting the Cruise Speed

Drive to the desired speed.

SET+

~~Press to set the toggle button~~ upward to set the current speed.

SET-

~~Press to set the toggle button~~ downward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator will change color.*

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

~~Press to increase the toggle button~~ upward to increase the set speed.

SET-

~~Press the toggle button~~ downward to decrease the set speed.

The set speed changes in small increments.

Note: *Press and hold the ~~switch toggle button~~ upward or downward to change the set speed in larger increments.*

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: The set speed is stored.

Resuming the Set Speed

RES

Press to resume the set speed.

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (G1868799) edited

WARNINGS

 Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

 Adaptive cruise control may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

 Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

 Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer that has trailer brakes. The auto-brake component of the adaptive cruise control system does not operate the trailer brakes. Using adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer that has trailer brakes may result in the loss of vehicle control, which when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in serious injury, the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

 Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNINGS

 Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

 Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

 Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

The system helps you to maintain a gap from the vehicle in front of you. The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front.

The system uses a radar sensor which projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.

Note: It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.



E248321

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press and release the switch.

The information display shows the grey indicator light. The system is now in standby.



E260516

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Drive to the desired speed.



Press and release the switch: toggle button upward to set the current speed.

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
2. A green indicator light, the current gap setting and your set speed appear in the information display.



E249552

3. A vehicle graphic illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS



When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.



Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

The system may provide slight temporary acceleration when you use your driver side direction indicator while following a vehicle to aid passing the vehicle.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 12 mph (20 km/h).
- A new gap distance is set.

The system applies the brakes to slow the vehicle to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front. The system applies only limited maximum braking. Press the brake pedal to override the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the information display when the system continues to brake. You must take immediate action.

Setting the Gap Distance



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*



The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive cruise control, distance between vehicle settings

Set speed mph (km/h)	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Distance gap yd (m)	Dynamic beha- vior
100 (62)	1	1	28 (31)	Sport.
100 (62)	2	1.4	39 (43)	Normal.
100 (62)	3	1.8	50 (55)	Normal.
100 (62)	4	2.2	61 (67)	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Overriding the System

WARNING



If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

Use the accelerator pedal normally to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the vehicle graphic does not appear in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed



Press and-release the switch. Press-and-release toggle button upward to increase the switch- set speed.



Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

The set speed changes in small increments.

Note: Press and hold the ~~switch~~ toggle button upward or downward to change the set speed in larger increments.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN Press and release the switch or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed and gap setting displays in grey but does not erase.

Note: If you press the clutch pedal for an extended period, this action also cancels the set speed.

Resuming the Set Speed

RES Press and release the switch.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed shows continuously in the information display while the system is active.

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

Automatic Cancellation

The system is not functional at vehicle speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h). An audible alarm sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when: ~~Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 12 mph (20 km/h):~~

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, the information display indicates low engine speed. Shift to a lower gear (manual transmission only) to avoid automatic cancellation.

Hilly Condition Usage

Note: An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled.

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

 Press and release the switch.

Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

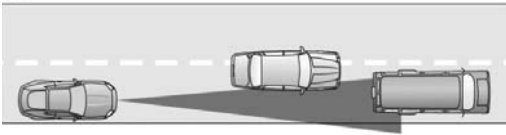
Detection Issues

WARNING

 On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

The radar sensor has a limited field of detection. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

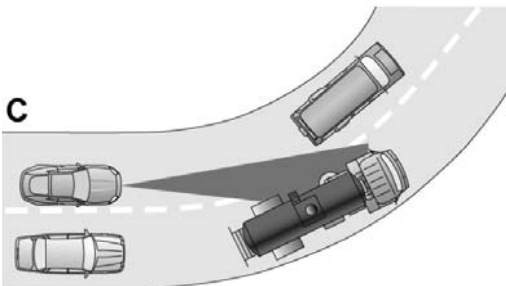
A



B



C



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- A With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane.
- B Motorcyclists may be detected late, or not at all.
- C With vehicles in front of you when going into and coming out of a bend. The detection beam does not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

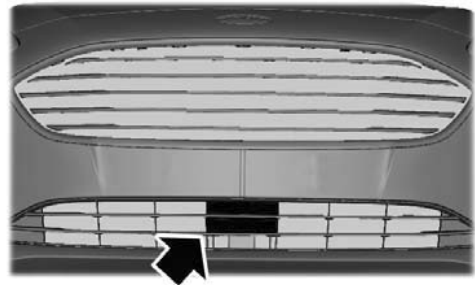
If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor



E244279

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is behind the grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

Note: You cannot see the sensor, it is behind a fascia panel.

Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors and aftermarket lights may also block the sensor.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short period of time.It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait a short period of time or switch to normal cruise control.

It is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked.A false blocked condition self clears or clears after a key cycle.

Due to the nature of radar technology, you may get a blocked sensor warning when no obstruction blocks your sensor.This can happen, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments.A false blocked condition either self clears or clears after a key cycle.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING



Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles.Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and automatic braking does not activate. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to cruise control using the information display.

SPEED LIMITER (G1936914) edited

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

Using Speed Limiter

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching the System On and Off



Press to set the system in standby mode. Press again to switch the system off.

Setting the Speed Limiter



Press ~~with~~ the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle ~~Press again to set the~~ desired speed limit. speed. The

set speed is stored and displayed in the information display.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Canceling the Set Speed



Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system ~~goes into~~ returns to standby mode.

Resuming the Set Speed



Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Intentionally Exceeding the Speed Limit

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed ~~limit-~~ limit, or when you press the RES button.

System Warnings

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning ~~flashes-~~ appears in the information display.

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning ~~flashes-~~ appears in the information display and a tone sounds.

DRIVER ALERT (G1886863)

WARNINGS



The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

WARNINGS



At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates. The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

You can switch the system on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 82).

Note: The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.

System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 89).

Note: The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

System Display

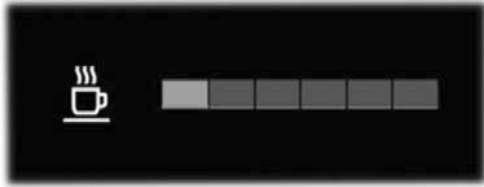
Your calculated alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar. The bar travels from right to left as your calculated alertness level decreases.

You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 82).



E249476

Your calculated alertness level is good.



E249477

Your calculated alertness level is low. You should stop your vehicle and take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

Your calculated alertness level shows in gray if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (G1886864)

WARNINGS

 The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

 At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNINGS

 The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

 The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

The system is designed to alert you by providing a temporary steering torque input or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror. The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h). You can view the system status in the instrument cluster.

Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the direction indicator on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.

- The vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

Switching the System On and Off



E270719

Press the button on the steering wheel stalk.

System Settings

The system has different settings that you can view or adjust using the information display. See **General Information** (page 82).

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey, the mode is set to alert.

Alert Mode

Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

Intensity Setting

You can adjust the steering wheel vibration intensity setting using the information display.

Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

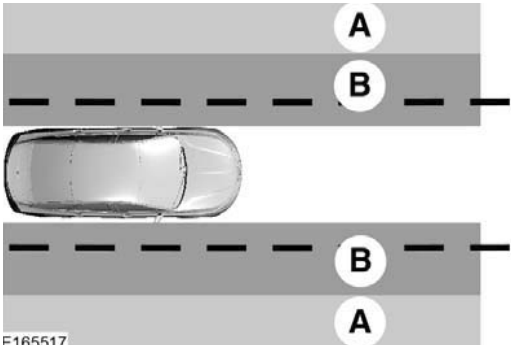
Aid Mode

Provides a temporary steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Alert and Aid Mode

Provides a temporary steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.



- A Alert mode.
- B Aid mode.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

System Display



When the system is off, the system indicator or the lane markings do not display.

Alert Mode



When you switch the system on, an indicator appears in the instrument cluster and a graphic showing the lane markings displays.

When the system is on, the color of the lane markings and the system indicator change to indicate the system status.

	System Status
Gray.	Unavailable.
Green.	Available.
White.	
Red.	Warning provided.
An indicator flashes.	

Aid Mode



If you switch aid mode on, arrows also display with the lane markings.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM (G1745160)

WARNINGS

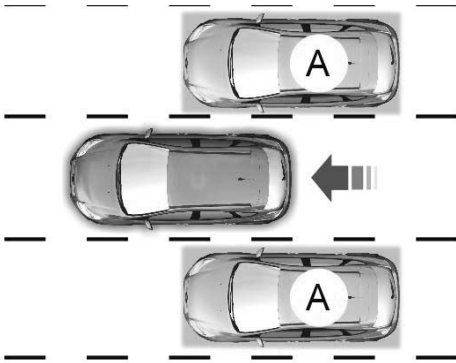


Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNINGS



The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



E124788

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper.

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Using the Blind Spot Information System

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

System Lights and Messages

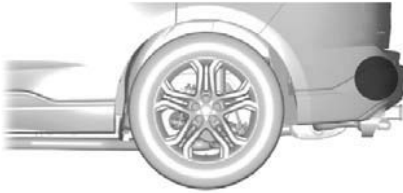


E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 89). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 89).

Switching the System Off and On

You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 82). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT (G1768802)

WARNINGS



Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



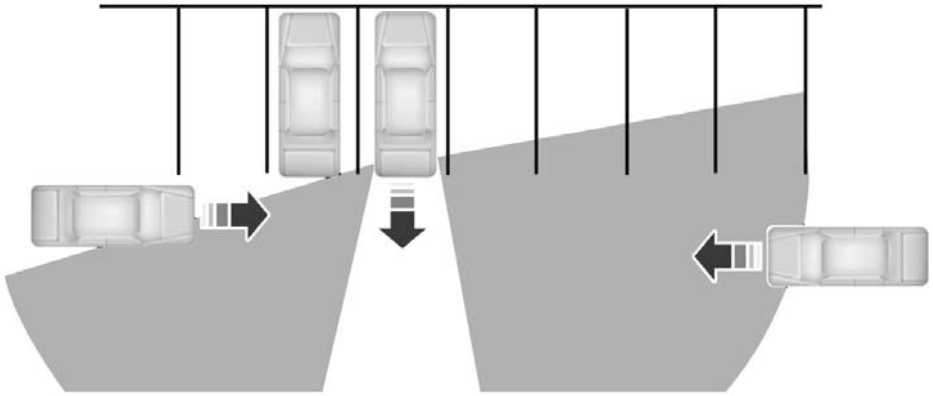
The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides when you shift into reverse (R).

Using the Cross Traffic Alert System

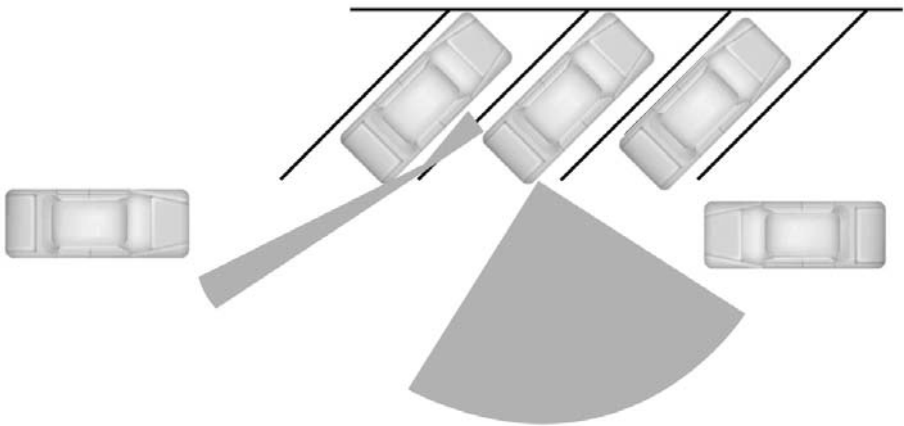
The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 37 mph (60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



E142440

The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts



E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing in the distance.

Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R). See **Information Messages** (page 89).

System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

System Errors

If the system detects a fault a message displays. See **General Information** (page 82).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 82). When you switch system off, a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 89).

Note: The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on and you shift into reverse (R). If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

(G1562345) **edited**

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS



The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.



At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Note: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

Note: Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance. Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

Note: The system may not detect all traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.

Note: Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

Note: The system is designed to detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.

Note: Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

The sensor is behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current maximum speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

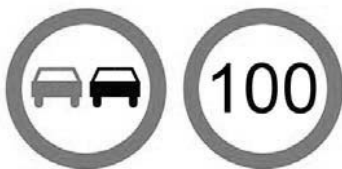
- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

Using Traffic Sign Recognition

Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels that you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 82).

System Display



E132994

The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they are greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

Switching the System On and Off

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 82).

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

ECO MODE ECO MODE (G1952525)

edited

Principle of Operation

The system is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently. See **Economical Driving** (page 208).

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. See **Fuel Consumption** (page 137).*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

Eco Mode System Display

You can view the instantaneous efficiency level or the trip summary in the information display.

Instantaneous Efficiency Level

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

To view the instantaneous efficiency level, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
MyView	Press the menu button.
Eco coach	Press the OK button.

Trip Summary

The calculated trip summary is shown as three colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration and speed during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

To view the trip summary, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
MyView	Press the menu button.
Eco coach	Press the OK button. Press it again to view the trip summary.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

(G1973410) edited

WARNINGS

 You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

WARNINGS

 The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNINGS



The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.



In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNINGS



The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

The pre-collision assist system is active when your vehicle reaches a speed greater than approximately 3 mph (5 km/h). Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Description
Alert	When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Active braking - vehicles without adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. The system is active at speeds up to 80 mph (130 km/h).
Active braking - vehicles with adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

To switch active braking on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the OK button.
Active braking	Press the OK button.

Distance Alert (If Equipped)

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

Note: The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

Distance Alert Sensitivity Settings

To adjust the distance alert sensitivity settings, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the OK button.
Alert sensitivity	Press the OK button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.

Distance Indication (If Equipped)

A graphical indication displays the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

Note: The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 82.0 ft (25 m) .	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft)	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 55.8 ft (17 m).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

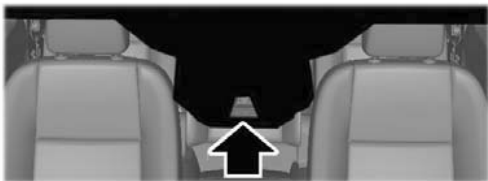
Switching Distance Indication On or Off

To switch distance indication on or off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Pre-collision Assist	Press the OK button.
Distance indication	Press the OK button.

Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors

Vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

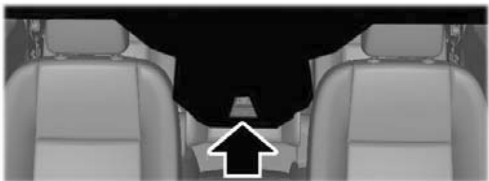
Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message may appear in the information display.

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control



E243054

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message may appear in the information display.

Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates amber when you switch the system off.

Pre-Collision Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message may display.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cause	Action
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

DRIVE CONTROL DRIVE CONTROL (G1960037) edited

Selectable Drive Modes

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings, for example steering, gear shifting, handling and powertrain response.

Selecting a Drive Mode

The button is on the center console.



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes. Release the button to confirm your selected drive mode.



Normal



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: This is the default mode each time you switch the ignition on.

Eco



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

Slippery



Vehicle settings suited for use in inclement weather.

Sport



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Track



Vehicle settings suited for track driving.

GENERAL INFORMATION (G1477738)

WARNINGS

-  Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.
-  Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.
-  Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.
-  Do not drive with the luggage compartment or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.
-  Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 284).
-  Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

Note: When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE (G1908327)

Adjustable Load Floor

The adjustable load floor can be held open or placed in the upper or lower positions within the luggage compartment.

In the upper position, place it on top of the floor supports.



E270441

In the lower position, slide it into the lower slot in the floor supports.



E270440

To hold the load floor open, raise and slide into the angled slots in the floor supports behind rear seats.

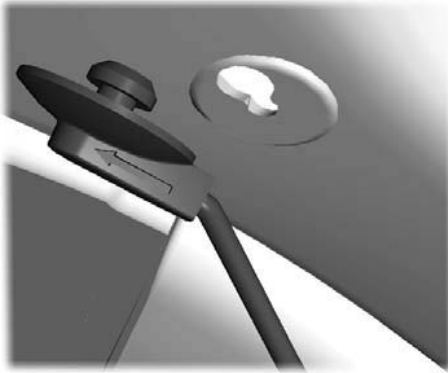
LUGGAGE COVERS (G1911342) edited

WARNING

-  Do not load any objects on the shelf that may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of the vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or collision.

Removing the Cover

To remove the luggage cover:



E266421

1. ~~Rotate and pull~~ Gently push the retaining knobs out from the liftgate trim panel. clip up and remove it.
2. Raise the luggage cover.
3. Pull the luggage cover backward.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL (G1868888)

WARNINGS



Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack is 110 lb (50 kg).

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel.*

Towbar Carriers

When using a towbar attached carrier, consider the following:

- Do not exceed the maximum vertical weight on the towball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Towbar Dimensions** (page 282).
- Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.
- Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS - VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL (G1868565)

WARNING



Your vehicle is not approved for roof racks. Never install a roof rack to your vehicle.

Towbar Carriers

When using a towbar attached carrier, consider the following:

- Do not exceed the maximum vertical weight on the towball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Towbar Dimensions** (page 282).
- Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.
- Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

TOWING A TRAILER - 1.0L ECOBOOST™/1.1L, 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL (G1703012)

edited

WARNINGS



Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



The rear tire pressures must be increased by 3 psi (0.2 bar) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.



Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Do not exceed Towing trailers beyond the maximum permissible recommended gross trailer vertical weight on the tow ball as stated in the exceeds the limit of your vehicle specification chart and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

Note: We recommend that you use a trailer safety cable. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you use a trailer safety cable.

Note: The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to the trailer load.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 3,281 ft (1,000 m) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 3,281 ft (1,000 m), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 3,281 ft (1,000 m).

Note: Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.

TOWING A TRAILER - 1.5L ECOBOOST™ (G1581962)

WARNING



Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing.

TOW BALL (G1477788)

WARNINGS



When not in use, always transport the tow ball arm securely fastened in the luggage compartment.



Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of your vehicle and the trailer depends on this.



Do not use any tools for mounting or dismantling the tow ball arm.

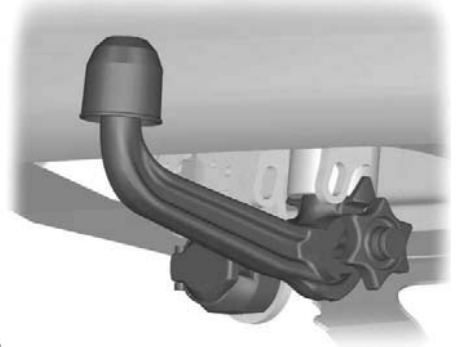


Do not modify the trailer coupling.



Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

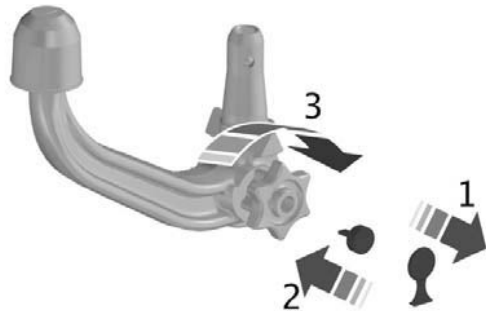
Note: Remove any adapter from the tow bar socket. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the socket. Clean the tow bar socket regularly and make sure no dirt prevents the socket lid from closing properly.



E71328

A 13-pin trailer socket and the tow ball arm seat are provided under the rear bumper. Turn the trailer socket down through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

Unlocking the Tow Ball Arm Mechanism



E71329

1. Remove the protecting cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock.

3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out and turn it clockwise until it clicks.

Note: The red mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.

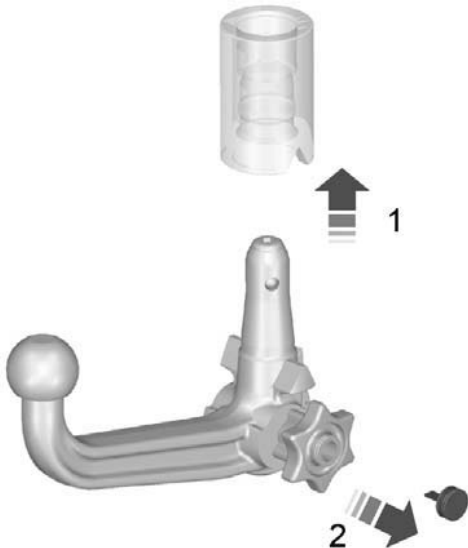
4. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is unlocked.

Inserting the Tow Ball Arm

WARNING



The tow ball arm may only be inserted when completely unlocked.



E71330

Note: Pull out the plug.

1. Insert the tow ball arm vertically and press it upwards until it engages.

Note: Do not hold your hand near the handwheel.

Note: The green mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.

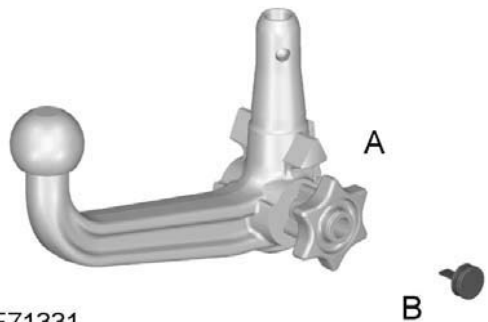
2. Turn the key counterclockwise and remove the key to lock the tow ball.
3. Pull the protecting cap from the key bow and press it onto the lock.

Driving With a Trailer

WARNING



If any of the below conditions cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorized dealer.

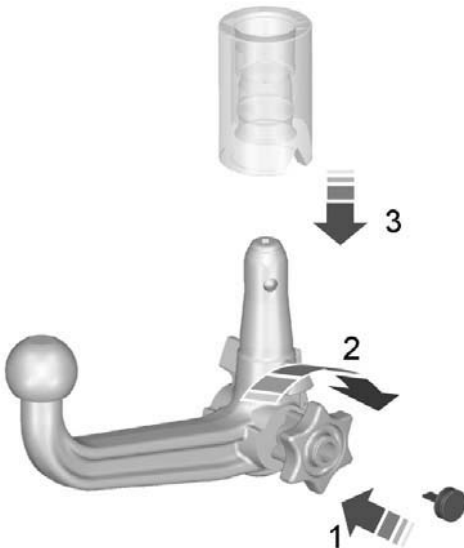


E71331

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is correctly locked. Check that:

- the green marks are aligned
- the handwheel (A) is correctly fitted to the tow ball arm
- you have removed the key (B)
- the tow ball arm is securely positioned.

Removing the Tow Ball Arm



E71332

Note: *Unhitch the trailer.*

1. Remove the protecting cap. Press the cap into the key bow. Insert the key and unlock.
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out, turn it clockwise against the stop.
3. Remove the tow ball arm.
4. Release the handwheel.

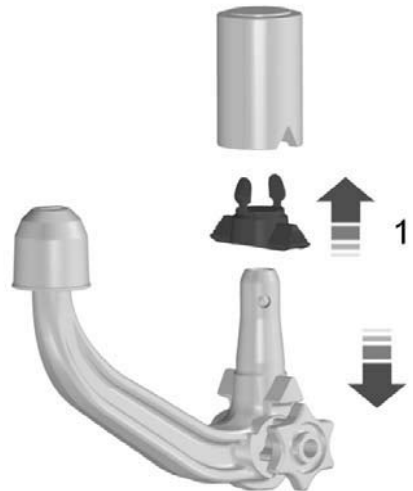
When unlocked in this way, the tow ball arm can be reinserted at any time.

Driving Without a Trailer

WARNING



Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.



E94771

Remove the tow ball arm. Insert the plug into its seat (1).

Maintenance

WARNING



Remove the tow ball arm and protect the seat with the plug before steam cleaning your vehicle.

Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces, and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

In case of loss, replacement keys are available from the manufacturer by stating the number on the lock cylinder.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION (G1608049)

WARNINGS

 You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

 If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

 Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

 When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 213).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 31 mph (50 km/h). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 206).

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (G1693735)

WARNINGS

 You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 You must make sure the transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

 The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock, make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position before you tow.

 Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

 Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 32°F (0°C).

 Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. If the transmission gear shift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Transmission** (page 147).
- Maximum speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Note: *If you need to exceed a speed of 30 mph (50 km/h) and a distance of 50 mi (80 km) while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.*

Note: *We recommend you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) or farther than 50 mi (80 km).*

WARNING



In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 213).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

Note: *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

BREAKING-IN (G1477791)

Tires

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 mi (500 km). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 mi (150 km) in town and for the first 1,000 mi (1,500 km) on freeways.

Engine

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,000 mi (1,500 km). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 2,000 mi (3,000 km), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING (G1598582)

edited

The following ~~will help~~ helps to improve fuel ~~consumption~~ consumption:

- ~~Tire Pressures~~ Check Regularly check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy. ~~Gear Shifting~~ Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions. ~~Anticipation~~ Adjust the vehicle speed and make sure that they are inflated to the distance to other vehicles without correct pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 270).
- Follow the need for heavy braking recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or acceleration. ~~Efficient Speed~~ Higher speeds use more fuel. Reduce your cruising speed on open roads. ~~Accessories~~ for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not ~~add~~ carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle. ~~vehicle~~, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

- **Electrical Systems** Switch off all electrical systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS (G1477792)

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13°F (-25°C).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER (G1661881)

WARNING

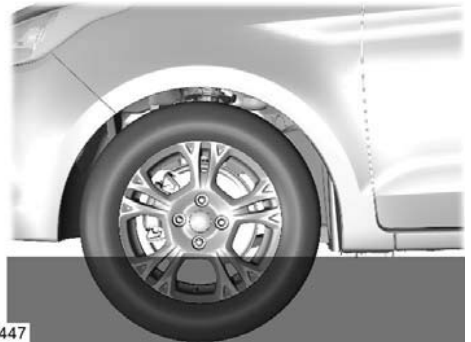


Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

Note: Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E266447

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS (G1448653)

WARNINGS



Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNINGS



Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



E142666

To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

ENGINE OVERSPEED ENGINE OVERSPEED (G1972108) edited

Note: Always wait until the engine is properly warmed up before running high engine speeds.

Your ST vehicle is equipped with an overspeed feature to increase its performance range. The standard maximum engine speed of 6300 RPM is indicated by a narrow redline on the tachometer face. The redline becomes thicker at the overspeed engine speed of 6600 RPM.

This feature allows one second of overspeed above 6300 RPM. Once the one second limit has been reached, the electronically controlled rev limit ramps down to 6300 RPM and holds there. Once engine speed has dropped below 6100 RPM, the overspeed timer is reset and one second of overspeed up to a maximum of 6600 RPM is enabled.

Do not operate the engine at high RPM and low load for sustained periods of time, as damage may occur.

HAZARD FLASHERS (G1477795) edited



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists. Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash. Press the button again to turn them off. If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine. Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash switch is on the instrument panel.

Use the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off



Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on.

Note: All direction indicators flash.

Note: Prolonged use of the hazard flashers could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns you of a failed direction indicator bulb.

Press the button again to switch the hazard flashers off.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, if you heavily brake heavily, the hazard flashers could turn on.

Hazard Flashers Warning Lamp



Flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

FIRST AID KIT (G1477796)

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE (G1477797)

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

FUEL SHUTOFF (G1448655) edited

WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be checked, inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to start position.

3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Switch on the ignition to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.

Note: In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

(G1965077) **edited**

WARNINGS

 Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as grounding ground points.

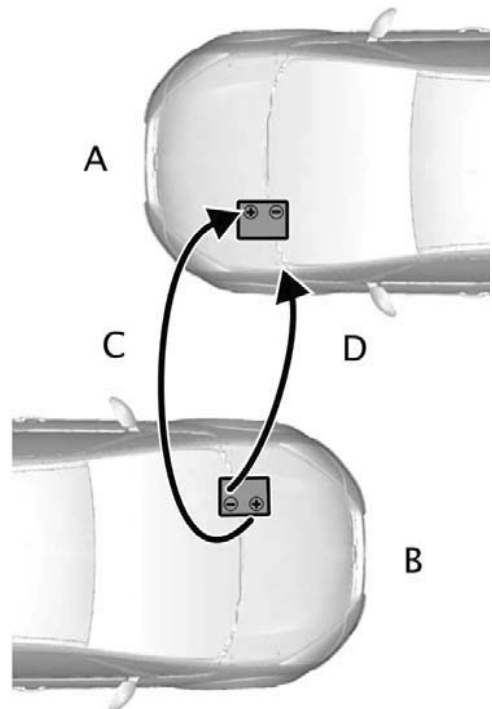
 Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

WARNINGS

 Always use booster. Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps and adequate-size cable clamps.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery from your vehicle's electrical system.

To Connect the Booster Cables

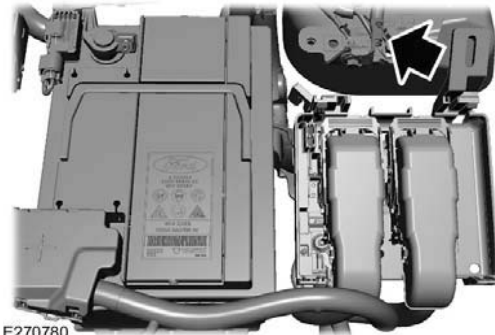


E102925

- A Vehicle with low charge battery
- B Booster battery vehicle
- C Positive connection cable
- D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.

2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).



E270780

4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D).

WARNINGS



Do not connect ~~directly to~~ the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery with low charge, discharged battery.



Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

To Start the Engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables. Do not switch on the headlamps when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

TOWING POINTS (G1869631)

Front Towing Point

WARNINGS



The recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it and make sure that it is fully tightened. Failure to do so could result in the recovery hook becoming loose.

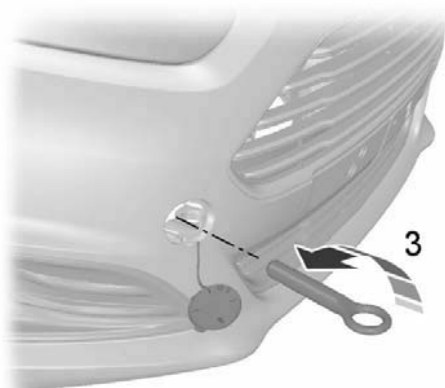


You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



E152070

1. Push the cover.
2. Carefully remove the cover.



E152071

3. Install the recovery hook.

The recovery hook is in the spare wheel well.

You must carry the recovery hook in your vehicle at all times.

Rear Towing Point



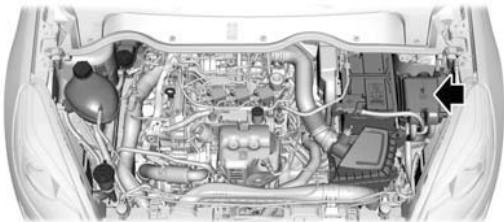
E250887

Remove the cover to install the recovery hook.

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar, use this to tow other vehicles.*

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS FUSE BOX LOCATIONS (G1936886) edited

| Engine Compartment Fuse Box



1259016

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box |

The fuse box is behind the glove compartment.

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART (G1893599)

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E248207

215 (G1936886)

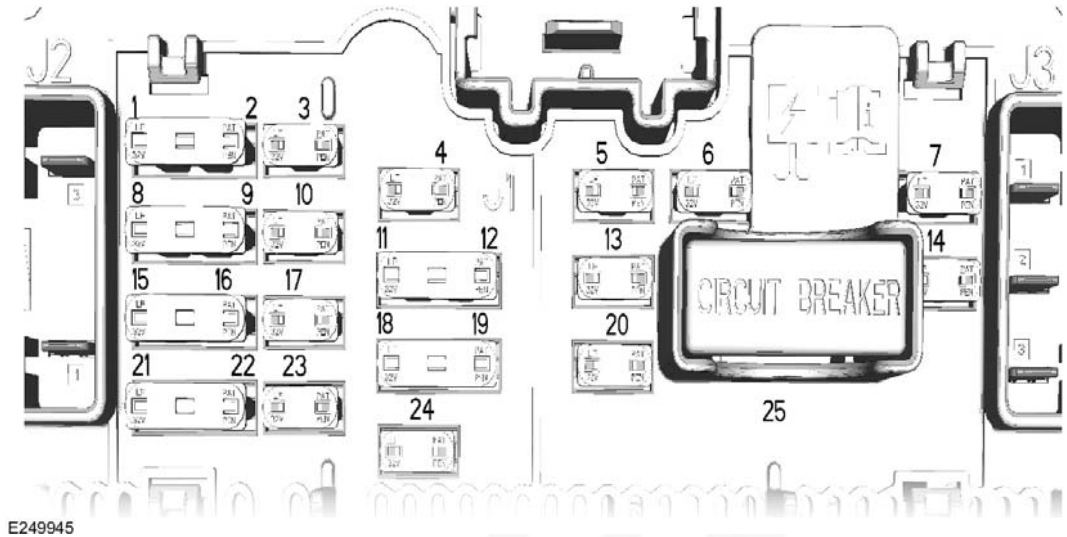
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	-	Not used.
2	60 A	Intake air heater.
3	-	Not used.
4	60 A	Glow plug monitor.
5	40 A	Right-hand heated windshield element.
6	30 A	Starter motor.
7	40 A	Blower motor.
8	-	Not used.
9	60 A	High-speed cooling fan.
10	40 A	Low-speed cooling fan.
11	20 A	Steering column lock.
12	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
13	-	Not used.
14	-	Not used.
15	-	Not used.
16	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
17	5 A	Powertrain control module.
18	-	Not used.
19	-	Not used.
20	-	Not used.
21	-	Not used.
22	-	Not used.
23	-	Not used.
24	-	Not used.
25	10 A	Coolant pump.
26	20 A	Evaporative emission canister purge valve.

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Camshaft position sensor. Fuel injection control pressure sensor. Turbocharger variable vane hydraulic control valve. Exhaust gas recirculation cooler bypass valve. Wastegate control valve solenoid. Heated oxygen sensor.
27	20 A	Powertrain control module.
28	15 A	Active grille shutter. Oil pump. Air conditioning compressor. Wastegate control valve solenoid. Water-in-fuel sensor.
29	15 A	Ignition coil-on-plug. Noise suppression capacitor.
30	-	Not used.
31	-	Not used.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	10 A	Blind spot information system. Cruise control module. Front parking aid camera. Rear parking aid camera. Parking assist control module.
34	10 A	Transmission fluid pump.
35	5 A	Anti-lock brake system.
36	10 A	Headlamps.
37	20 A	Heated front seats.
38	-	Not used.
39	40 A	Left-hand heated windshield element.
40	10 A	Windshield heated washer jets.
41	-	Not used.
42	-	Not used.
43	-	Not used.

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
44	40 A	Intake air heater.
45	30 A	Left-hand rear door module.
46	5 A	Headlamp leveling.
47	15 A	Audio unit amplifier.
48	20 A	Moonroof.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake system.
50	-	Not used.
51	-	Not used.
52	-	Not used.
53	-	Not used.
54	30 A	Right-hand rear door module.
55	30 A	Anti-lock brake system.
56	5 A	Brake on-off switch.
57	15 A	Audio unit amplifier.
58	40 A	Trailer module.
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	-	Not used.
61	15 A	Charge air cooler.
62	-	Not used.
63	-	Not used.
64	-	Not used.
65	20 A	Transmission fluid pump.
66	-	Not used.
67	-	Not used.
68	20 A	Fuel pump.
69	5 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor.

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
	20 A	Fuel heater (diesel engine only).
70	15 A	Fuel injectors.
71	-	Not used.
72	-	Not used.
73	5 A	Rain sensor.
74	30 A	Windshield wipers.
75	-	Not used.
76	-	Not used.
77	25 A	Heated rear window.
78	-	Not used.
79	20 A	Horn.
80	-	Not used.
81	-	Not used.
82	15 A	Rear window washer pump.
83	20 A	Cigar lighter. Front auxiliary power points.
84	-	Not used.
85	-	Not used.
86	20 A	Rear window wiper.
87	-	Not used.
88	-	Not used.
89	-	Not used.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



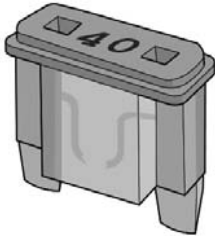
E249945

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.
3	10 A	Parking assist control module.
4	10 A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Moonroof.
7	30 A	Right-hand mirror switch. Right-hand front power windows.
8	5 A	Not used (spare).
9	5 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Auto-dimming interior mirror.
10	10 A	Data link connector.
11	5 A	Not used (spare).

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
12	5 A	Central security module.
13	15 A	Child safety locks. Fuel filler door.
14	30 A	Left-hand mirror switch. Left-hand front power windows.
15	15 A	Not used. Heated steering wheel. Headlamp control module.
16	15 A	Not used (spare).
17	15 A	Voice control. Information and entertainment display. Compact disc player.
18	7.5 A	Not used (spare).
19	7.5 A	Battery back-up sounder.
20	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
21	7.5 A	Climate control.
22	7.5 A	Steering wheel module. Instrument cluster. Data link connector.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Not used (spare).

CHANGING A FUSE (G1923462) edited

General Information



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

WARNING

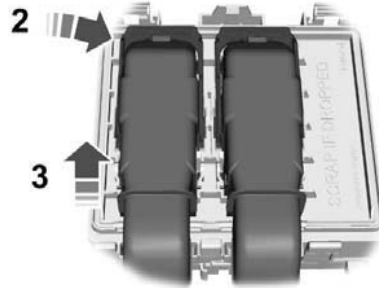


Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



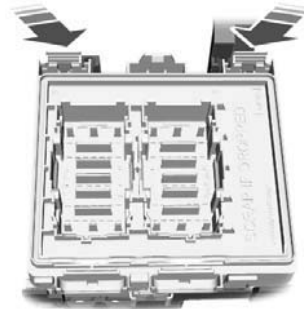
E253688

1. Pull latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

2. Lift connector lever upward.
3. Pull connector upward to remove it.



E253693

4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Flip the fuse box over and open the lid.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

WARNING

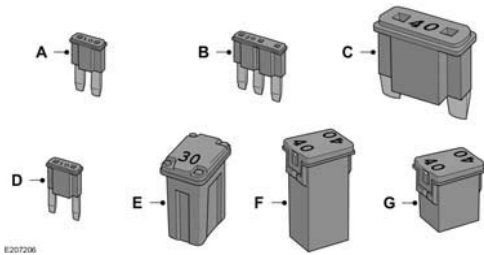


Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

1. Open the glove compartment and empty the contents.
2. Turn the retaining clips and remove them.

3. Press the sides inward and swivel the glove compartment downward.

Fuses Types



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.

GENERAL INFORMATION (G1477802)

WARNINGS



Do not work on a hot engine.



Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. See **Engine Cooling Fan** (page 235).

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

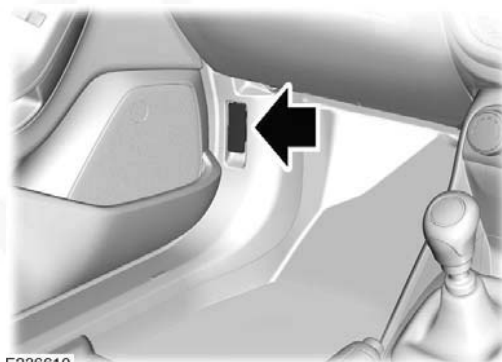
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 237).
- Tire pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 272).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 252).

Check Monthly

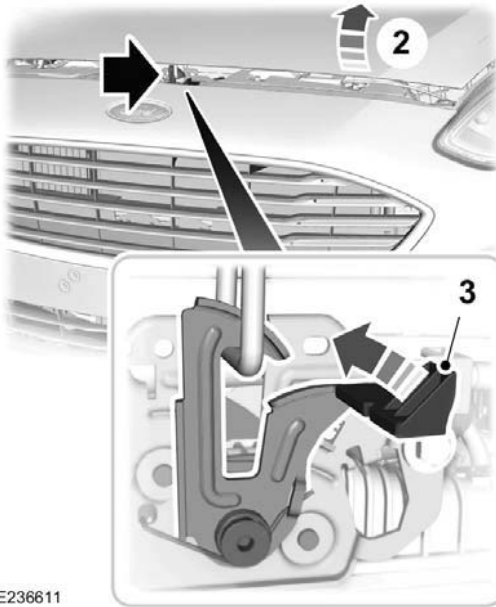
- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 233).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 235).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 236).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Lug Nuts** (page 280).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD (G1867970)

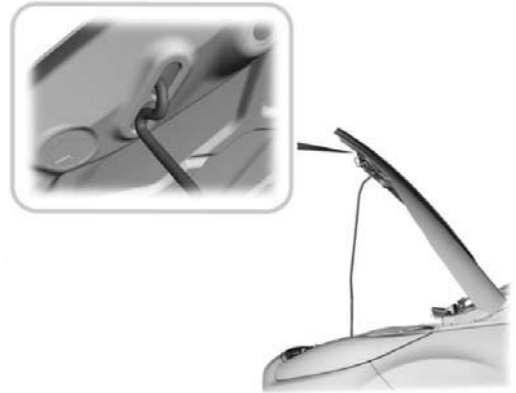
Opening the Hood



1. Pull the hood release lever.



2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.
4. Open the hood.



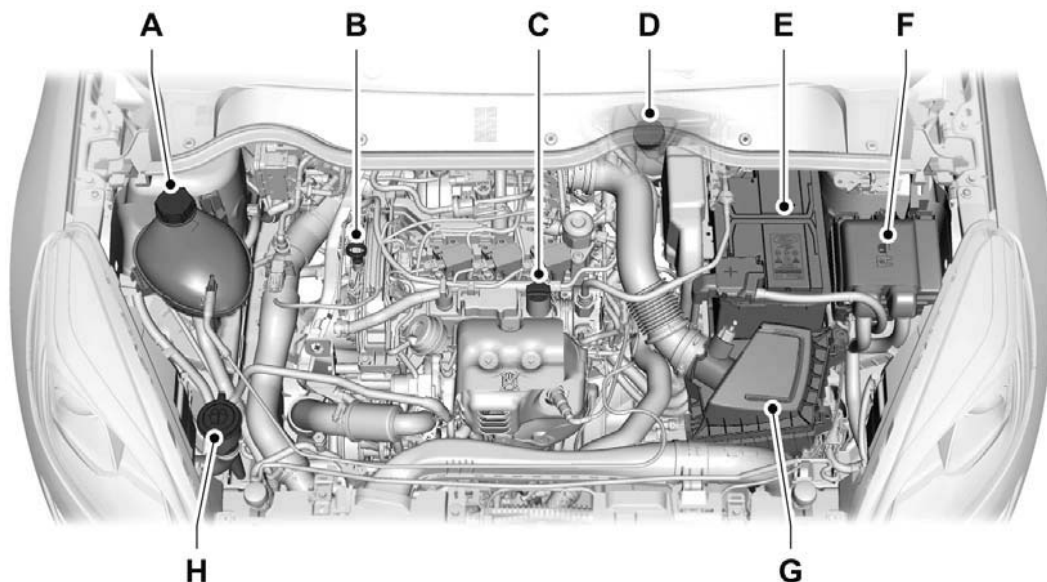
5. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8–12 in (20–30 cm).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

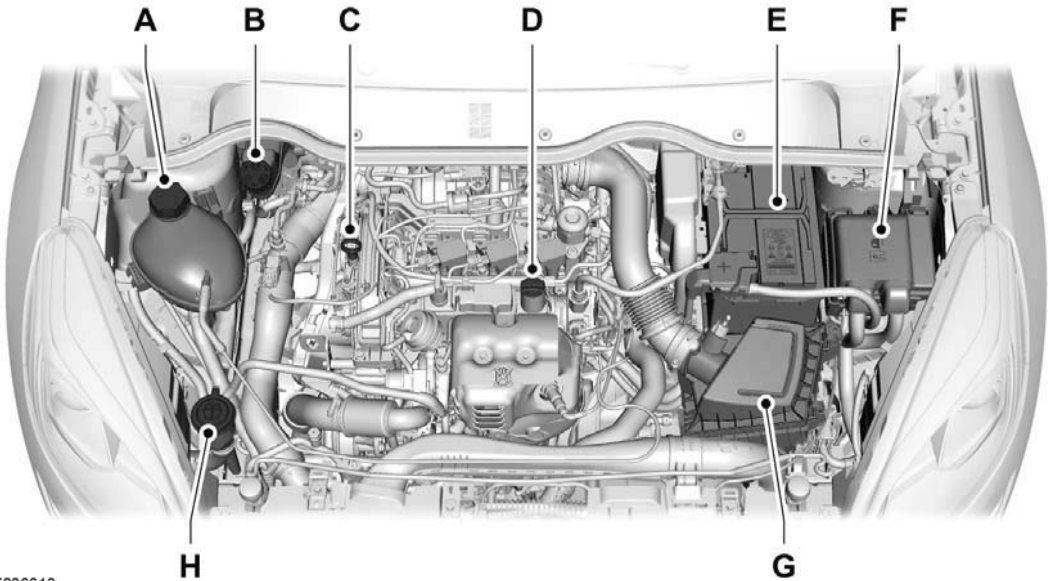
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, LHD (G1867971)



E236612

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| A | Engine coolant reservoir. See Engine Coolant Check (page 235). | E | Battery. See Changing the 12V Battery (page 237). |
| B | Engine oil dipstick. See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 232). | F | Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 215). |
| C | Engine oil filler cap. See Engine Oil Check (page 233). | G | Air filter. |
| D | Brake fluid reservoir. See Brake Fluid Check (page 236). | H | Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See Washer Fluid Check (page 237). |

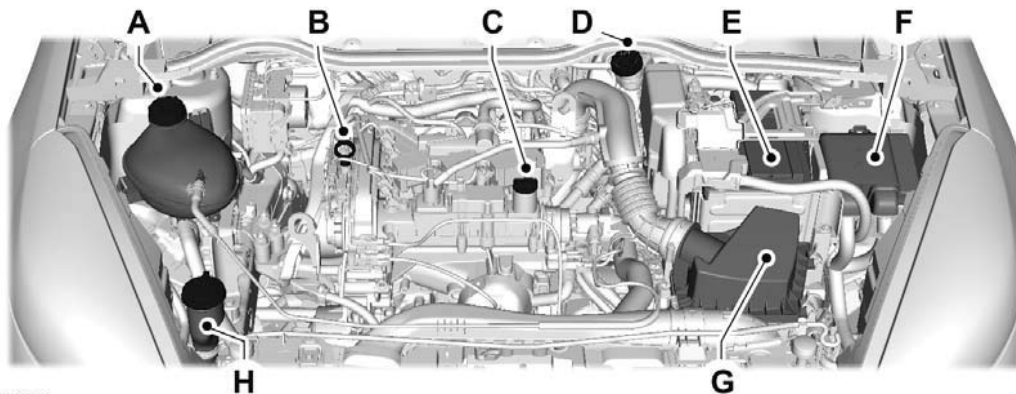
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, RHD (G1867972)



E236613

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 235).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 236).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 232).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 233).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 237).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 215).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 237).

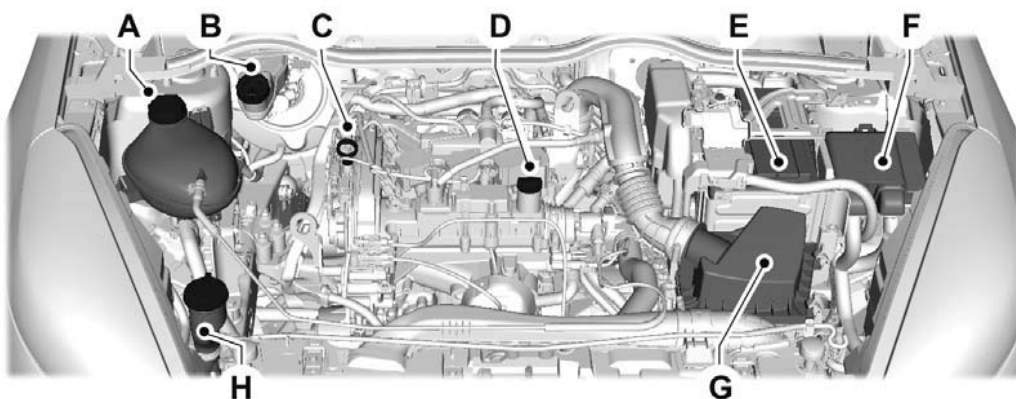
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.1L DURATEC, LHD (G1867973)



E236614

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A Engine coolant reservoir. See Engine Coolant Check (page 235).</p> <p>B Engine oil dipstick. See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 232).</p> <p>C Engine oil filler cap. See Engine Oil Check (page 233).</p> <p>D Brake fluid reservoir. See Brake Fluid Check (page 236).</p> | <p>E Battery. See Changing the 12V Battery (page 237).</p> <p>F Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 215).</p> <p>G Air filter.</p> <p>H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See Washer Fluid Check (page 237).</p> |
|--|---|

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.1L DURATEC, RHD (G1867974)

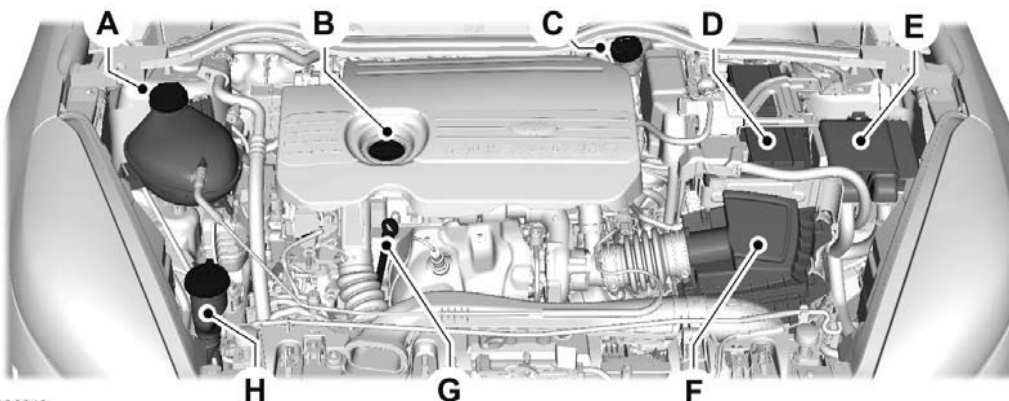


E236615

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 235).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 236).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 232).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 233).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 237).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 215).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 237).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL, LHD

(G1867977)

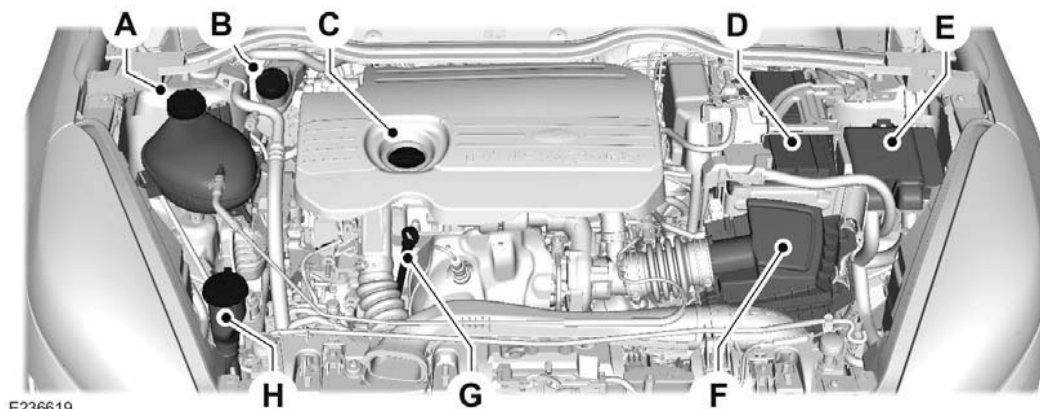


E236618

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 235).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 233).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 236).
- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 237).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 215).
- F Air filter.
- G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 233).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 237).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL, RHD

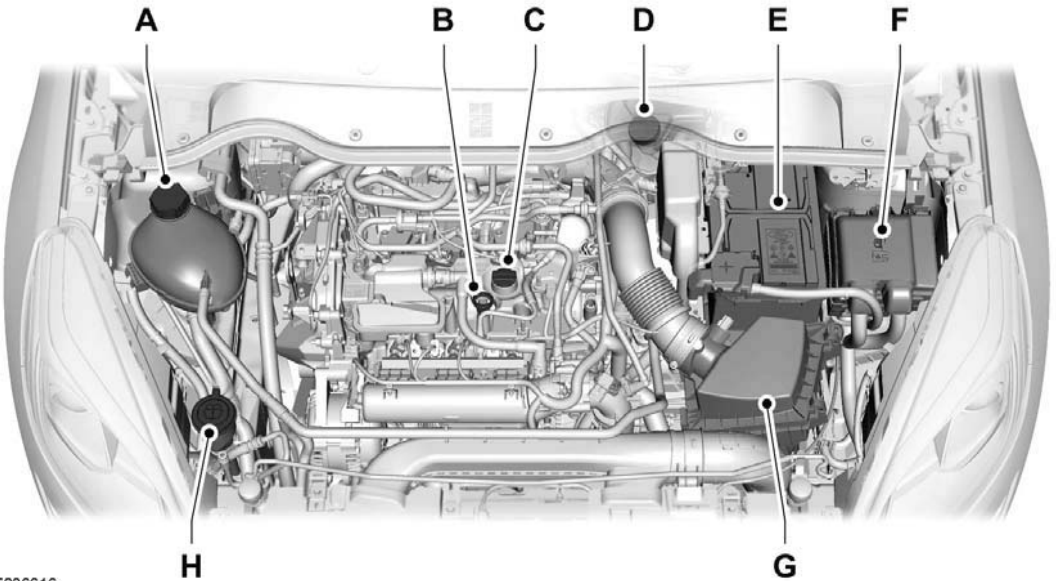
(G1867978)



E236619

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| A | Engine coolant reservoir. See Engine Coolant Check (page 235). | E | Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 215). |
| B | Brake fluid reservoir. See Brake Fluid Check (page 236). | F | Air filter. |
| C | Engine oil filler cap. See Engine Oil Check (page 233). | G | Engine oil dipstick. See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 233). |
| D | Battery. See Changing the 12V Battery (page 237). | H | Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See Washer Fluid Check (page 237). |

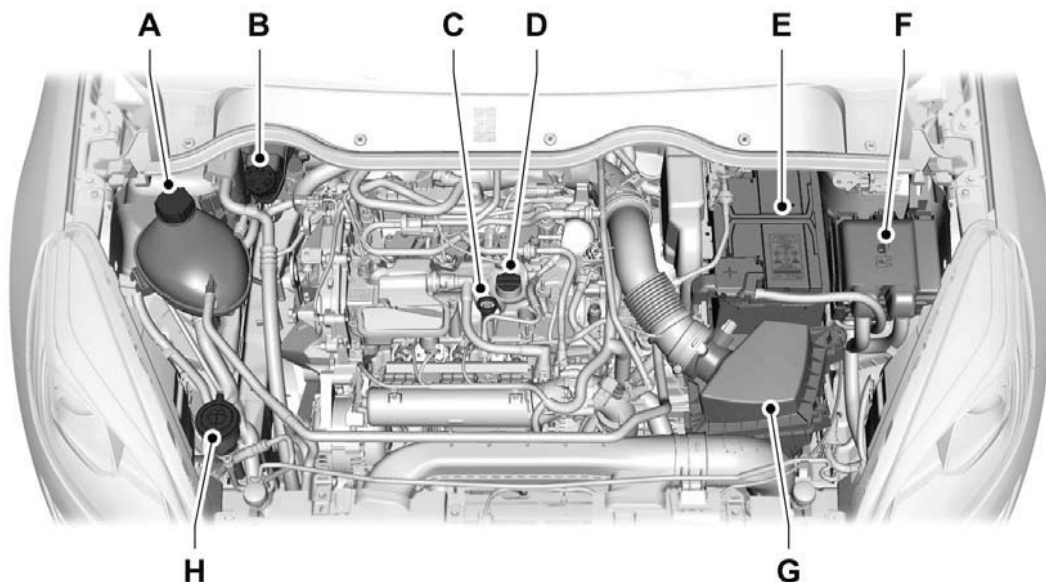
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™, LHD (G1867975)



E236616

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| A | Engine coolant reservoir. See Engine Coolant Check (page 235). | E | Battery. See Changing the 12V Battery (page 237). |
| B | Engine oil dipstick. See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 232). | F | Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 215). |
| C | Engine oil filler cap. See Engine Oil Check (page 233). | G | Air filter. |
| D | Brake fluid reservoir. See Brake Fluid Check (page 236). | H | Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See Washer Fluid Check (page 237). |

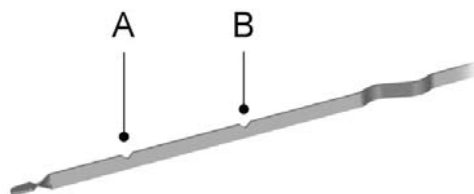
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™, RHD (G1867976)



E236617

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 235).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 236).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 232).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 233).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 237).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 215).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 237).

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - GASOLINE (G1688369)

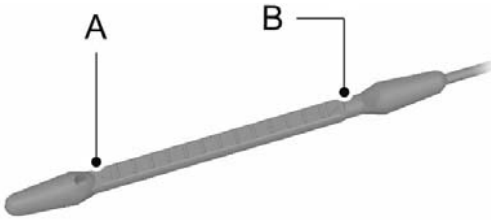


E141337

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - DIESEL

(G1588994)



E140423

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK (G1562149) edited

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.

Note: Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS

 Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Hot engine oil can burn you badly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

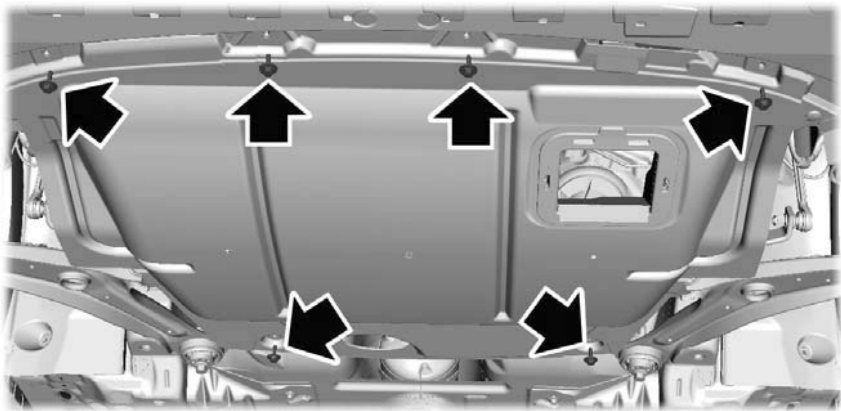
1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).
4. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE ENGINE UNDERSHIELD

(G1870813)



E236629

- 1. Remove the retaining bolts.
- 2. Carefully remove the engine undershield.
- 3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**OIL CHANGE INDICATOR
RESET OIL CHANGE
INDICATOR RESET** (G1951144) edited

Only reset the system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

To reset the oil change indicator, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle maintenance	Press the OK button.
Oil life	Press the OK button.
Reset oil life	Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - GASOLINE (G1830390)

WARNING



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL (G1830389)

WARNING



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 141).

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK (G1477815)

WARNINGS



Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



E170684

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, immediately add coolant.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C).

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.

Adding Coolant

WARNINGS



Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNINGS



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

We do not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

Note: Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.

Note: Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by the vehicle Warranty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add coolant to the **MAX** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Note: Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of coolant can cause damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK (G1870811)

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick. The automatic transmission does not consume fluid.

If the transmission is not correctly working, for example, the transmission slips, is slow to shift or there are signs of fluid leakage, have the system checked as soon as possible.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK (G1717969)

WARNINGS



Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK (G1717970)

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 236).

WASHER FLUID CHECK (G1689135)

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

(G1667059) **edited**

WARNINGS

 Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

 When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

 For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 225).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the clock and following features:

- ~~the pre-set~~ Window bounce-back. See **Power Windows** (page 71).
- Clock Settings.
- ~~Pre-set radio stations when you reconnect it.~~ stations.

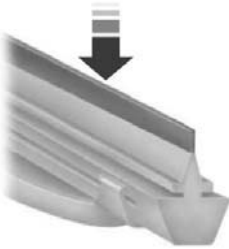
Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES (G1448670)

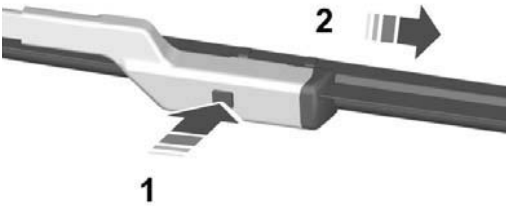


E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES (G1857142)



E72899

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

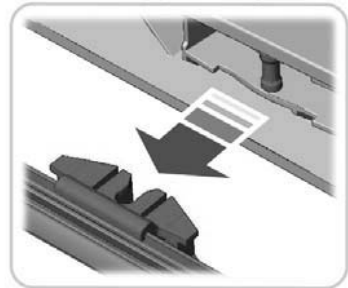
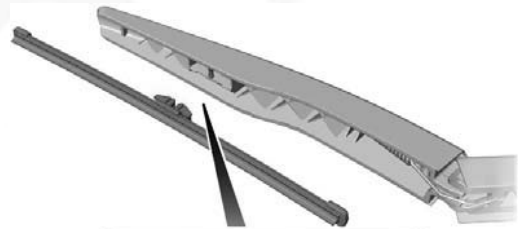
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

CHANGING THE REAR WIPER BLADES (G1874721)

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



E183236

2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

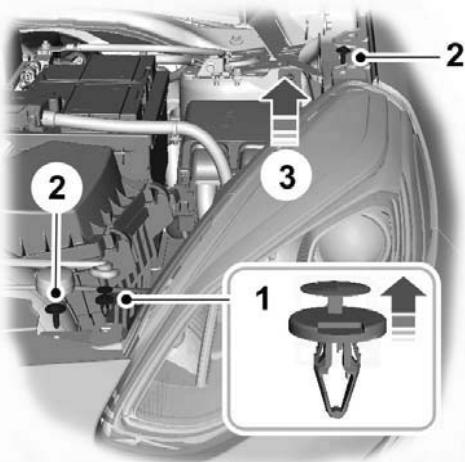
REMOVING A HEADLAMP (G1867984)

edited

WARNING



Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.

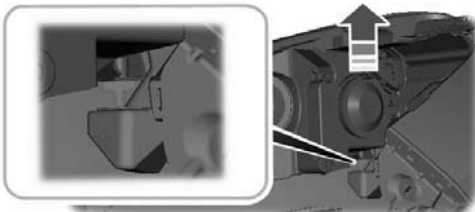


E236623

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the trim clip.

Note: Raise the center pin and then remove the clip.

2. Remove the screws that secure the lamp assembly. screws.



E249609

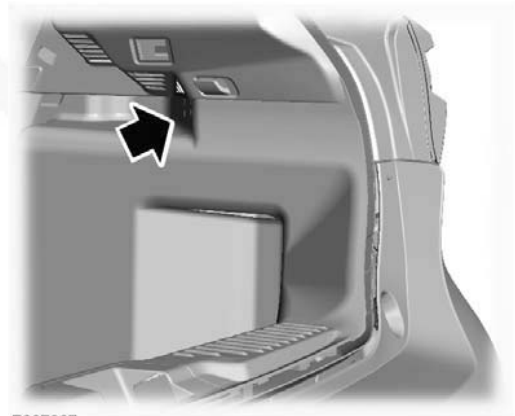
3. Carefully lift the headlamp up at the front and rear to disengage it from the lower fixing points.
4. Slightly rotate the rear of the headlamp toward the center of the vehicle so that it clears the front fender and radiator grille panel. Then lift the headlamp straight upward.

Note: Take care when removing the lamp. There are rupture points adjacent to the headlamp securing screws that are designed to separate under impact. Remove the headlamp. There are rupture points adjacent to the securing screws that are designed to separate under impact.

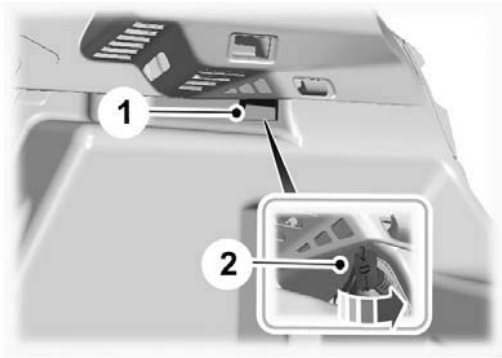
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. Remove the headlamp.
7. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

REMOVING A REAR LAMP (G1867985)

Brake Lamp, Rear Lamp and Direction Indicator



E237937



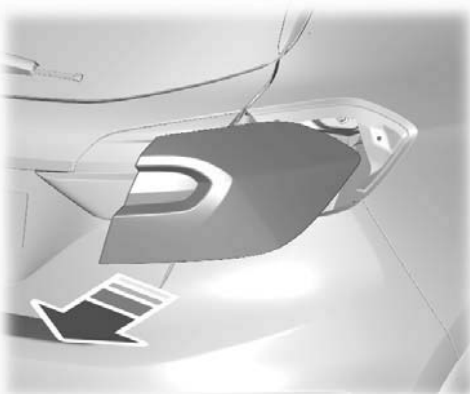
E237938

1. Carefully pull the access cover out.

Note: Do not cut the trim with a sharp object.

2. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise to release the lamp.

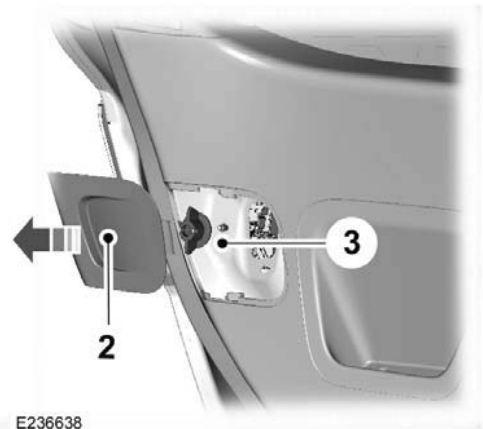
Note: You cannot fully remove the wing nut.



E236624

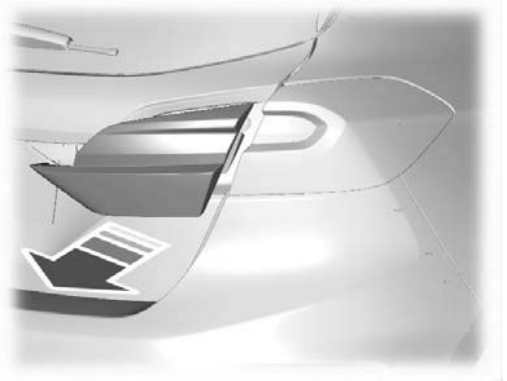
3. Remove the lamp.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Reversing Lamp



E236638

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.



E238054

4. Remove the lamp.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A BULB (G1867986) edited

WARNINGS



Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.



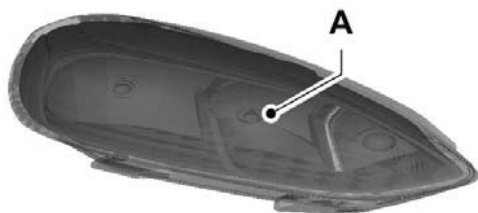
Bulbs, Lamps and associated components become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 291).

Headlamp

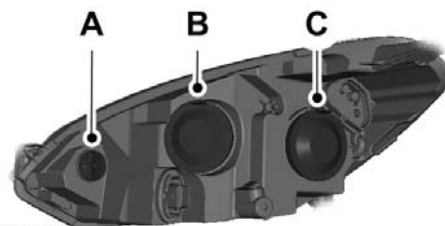
You may have to remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing a bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 240).

Reflector Headlamp



E249611

A Daytime running lamp.

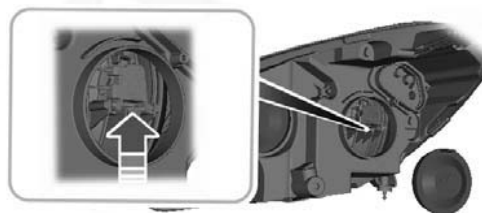


E236599

- A Front direction indicator.
- B Headlamp high beam headlamp and daytime running lamp.
- C Low beam headlamp.

Low Beam Headlamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.



E249634

2. Press the clip up to release the bulb holder.
3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

High Beam Headlamp and Daytime Running Lamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E249637

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

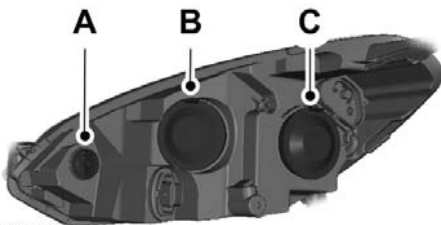
Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Projector Headlamp



E249612

- A Daytime running lamps: lamp.

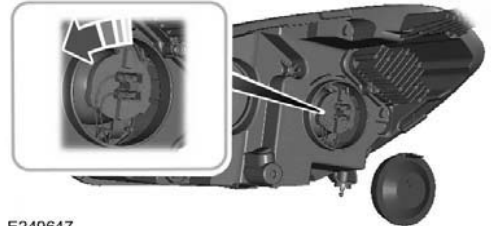


E236599

- A Front direction indicator.
- B Headlamp high beam: High beam headlamp.
- C Low beam headlamp.

Low Beam Headlamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



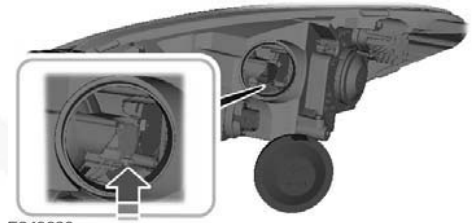
E249647

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

High Beam Headlamp

1. Carefully remove the cover.



E249660

2. Press the clip up to release the bulb holder.
3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Daytime Running Lamp

These lamps have LEDs.

Note: *LEDs are not serviceable. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.*

Front Direction Indicator



E236630

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

LED Headlamp



E272995

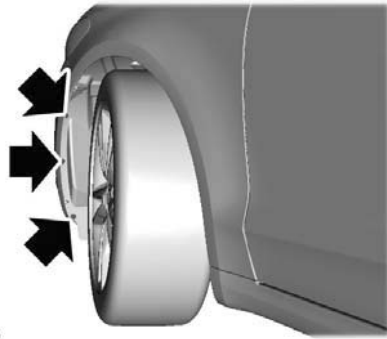
A Daytime running lamp.

These lamps have LEDs.

Note: *We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.*

Front Fog Lamp

All Vehicles - Excluding: ST, ST Line and Vignale



E159695

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the wheel arch liner fasteners. Pull the wheel liner back toward the tire to gain access to the bulb.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E236628

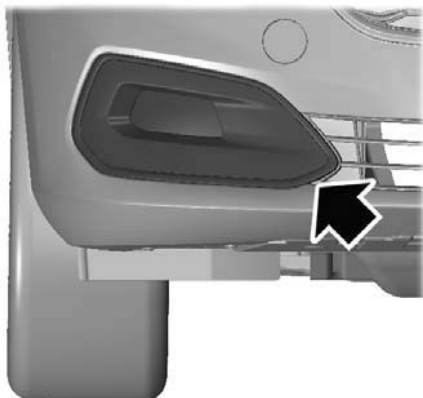
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

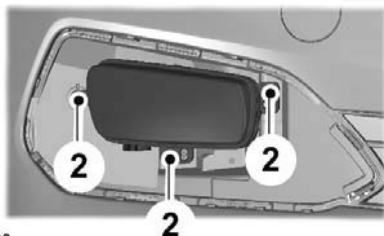
Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Front Fog Lamp (If Equipped) ST, ST Line and Vignale



E273066

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the housing cover.



E273068

2. Remove the screws and the lamp.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

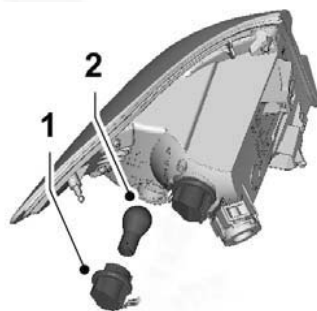
Side Repeater Use- Direction Indicator

a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver. We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to carefully remove the housing cover. Remove the lamp lens. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out. To install, reverse the removal procedure. bulb.

Rear Lamp

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp** (page 240).

Rear Lamp and Stop Lamp Stoplamp



E236634

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: High level rear lamps series have LEDs.

Note: We recommend that you have LEDs are not serviceable. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. changed by an authorized dealer.

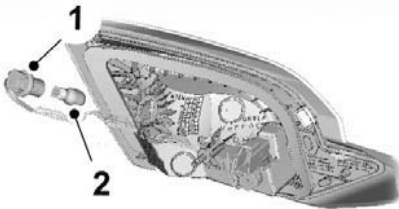
Rear Direction Indicator



E236635

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Reversing Lamp



E236636

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

License Plate Lamp

These lamps have LEDs.

Note: *LEDs are not serviceable. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.*

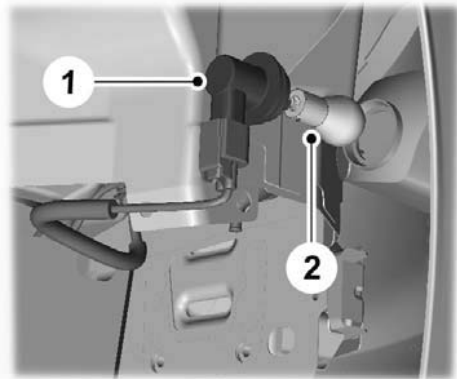
~~possible.~~ Central High Mounted Stop Lamp Stoplamp

These lamps have LEDs.

Note: *LEDs are not serviceable. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. We recommend that you have LEDs changed by an authorized dealer.*

Rear Fog Lamp

Access the underside of your vehicle behind the rear wheel.



E236637

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

TRACK USE TRACK USE (G1965713)

edited

| Launch Control

The system changes the chassis and powertrain settings to deliver fast acceleration when you pull away from a standstill. The system does not operate when the transmission is in reverse (R) or if the engine has not reached normal operating temperature.

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to switch launch control on.

Note: *The system remains on until you switch the ignition off.*

| Switching Launch Control On

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill with the wheels pointing straight ahead.

Note: *Make sure that there are no objects or traffic in front of your vehicle.*

2. Select **MyView** and press the menu button.
3. Select **FORD PERFORMANCE** and press the **OK** button.
4. Select **Launch control** and press the **OK** button.

Note: *The launch control indicator appears in the information display.*

5. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into first gear.
6. Fully press the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The system limits engine speed to 3500 RPM.*

7. Quickly and fully release the clutch pedal in a single movement.

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR (G1477841)

edited

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- When filling with AdBlue®, remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.*

Note: *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

Note: *Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.*

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: *Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.*

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.*

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.*

Cleaning Stripes or Graphics (If

Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C).

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

Body Paintwork Preservation

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

Frequently wash the underbody of your vehicle if salt is applied on the road.

Note: Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.

Note: Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.

Note: Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR (G1477842)

edited

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

Note: Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

Note: We recommend distilled water when cleaning.

Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

Note: Avoid soaking any surface. Do not use excessive amounts of water to clean the vehicle interior.

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Seatbelts

WARNINGS



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Leather Interior (If Equipped)

Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

Note: Do not steam clean.

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Do not spray any liquid directly onto the screens.

Do not use a microfiber cloth to clean the bezel around the display screens as it could damage the surface.

Rear Windows

Note: Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Note: Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS

(G1821407)

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Note: Clean and treat spills as soon as possible. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

Note: Avoid soaking any surface.

Note: We recommend distilled water when cleaning.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.

- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- Do not rub any stains into the leather.
- For perforated leather, do not use foam cleaning products.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE (G1477843)

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS (G1546526)

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

Note: Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

Note: Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

Note: If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Note: Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

BODY STYLING KITS (G1B40759)

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

GENERAL INFORMATION (G1477844)

edited

~~A decal with~~ The recommended tire pressure data is located in ~~inflation pressures are on the driver's door opening,~~ tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold. See **Tire Pressures** (page ?).

Note: *Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.*

~~Use only~~ Only use approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and ~~will~~ could make the National Type Approval invalid.

~~If you change the diameter of~~ tire size the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct vehicle speed. ~~Take~~ Have your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed. checked as soon as possible.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT - VEHICLES WITH: TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

(G1640978) edited

WARNINGS



Do not use the inflator kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death. Do not use the kit on ~~run flat~~ This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death. Do not try to seal damage to the tire sidewall. The tire could burst and cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or

WARNINGS

death. The kit seals most tire punctures with a diameter of up to 0.24 in (6 mm). This is to temporarily restore mobility. You must observe the following rules when using the kit: Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving maneuvers, especially if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. The kit will provide you with an emergency temporary repair, enabling you to continue your journey to the next vehicle or tire specialist, or to drive a maximum distance of 124 mi (200 km). Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). Keep the kit out of the reach of children. Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -40°F (-40°C) and 158°F (70°C). Using the Kit Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle. Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant which could cause serious personal injury. Never leave the kit unattended while in use. Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause loss of vehicle control or personal injury. You must only use the kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied. Apply the parking brake, even if you have parked on a level road. Do not attempt to remove foreign material, for example nails or screws from the tire. Leave the engine running while the kit is in use, but not if your vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area (for example inside a building). In these circumstances, switch the compressor on with the engine switched off. You must replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date (see top of bottle). Inform all other users of your vehicle that the tire has been temporarily sealed with the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed. Inflating the Tire Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire.

WARNINGS

This could cause personal injury. Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts. Watch the sidewall of the tire. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If contact occurs, rinse

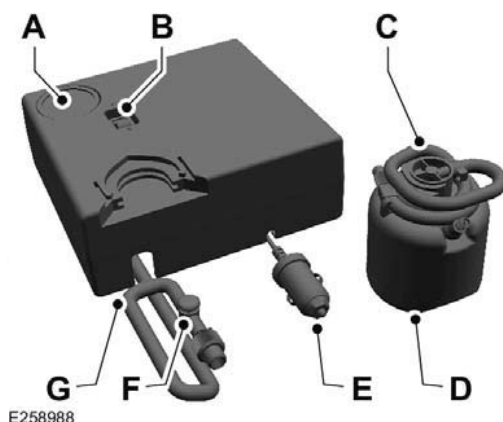
Depending on the affected areas immediately with plenty of water. type and extent of water and consult a physician. If the tire inflation pressure does not reach 26 psi (1.8 bar) within 10 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. In this case, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control. some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



Screwing the bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the bottle. Do not unscrew the bottle from the holder as the sealant will escape, which could cause serious loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

If your vehicle does not have a spare wheel it has a tire sealant and inflator kit. The kit is in the luggage compartment. Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

Note: The kit can only temporarily repair one tire puncture with a maximum puncture size of up to 0.24 in (6 mm).



- A Label: Pressure Gauge.
- B Sealant bottle: Power switch.
- C Sealant bottle hose: tire inflation pipe.
- D Bottle holder: Sealant bottle.
- E Pressure gauge: 12 volt DC power point connector.
- F Pressure relief valve.

Power plug with cable:

G Compressor switch:

H Repair kit hose: +

- G Compressor tire inflation pipe.

Note: A maximum speed warning label is in position 0. Insert the power plug F into the cigar lighter socket attached to the sealant bottle.

Note: Do not use the sealant bottle after its expiry date. You can obtain a replacement sealant bottle from an authorized dealer.



If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates do the following:

1. Gradually reduce the vehicle speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or auxiliary power screws from a punctured tire.

Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WARNINGS



Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.



Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

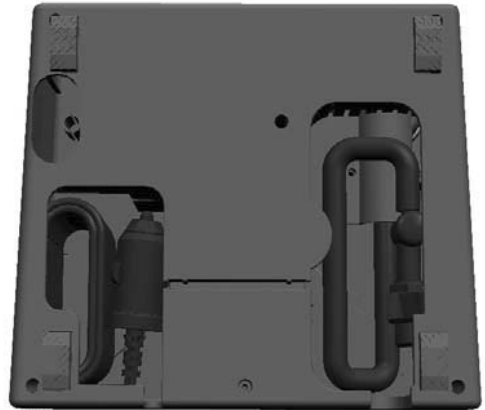


Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNINGS



Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.



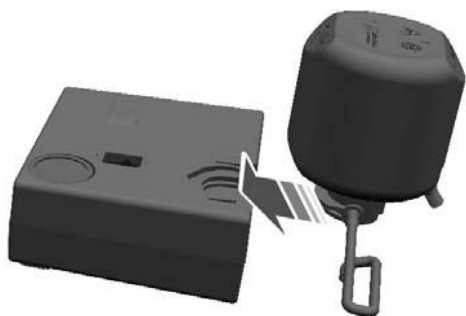
E258994

1. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E259148

2. Uncoil the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe.



E259014

3. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor.
4. Attach the compressor tire inflation pipe to the valve on the sealant bottle.



E257006

5. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe to the tire valve.



E257022

6. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 115).
7. Start the engine.



E259160

8. Move Switch the compressor switch to position 1. on.



E257121

9. Inflate the tire for no longer than 10 minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 26 psi (1.8 bar) and a maximum of 51 psi (3.5 bar). Move the compressor switch G to position 0 and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge E. When the system pumps sealant through the tire valve; the pressure may rise up to 87 psi (6 bar) but will drop again after approximately 30 seconds. After you have switched the compressor off, you may hear air escaping from the damaged tire. This is normal and can be ignored if the specified minimum tire pressure has been reached. Remove the power plug F from the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket. Quickly unscrew the hose C from the tire valve. Fasten the valve cap again. Some residual sealant fluid may drip or spray out of hose C while you are disconnecting it. This is normal. Leave the sealant bottle B in the bottle holder D. Make sure the kit is stored safely, but still easily accessible in your

vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure. Immediately drive approximately 2 mi (3 km) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area. to between 29–44 psi (2–3 bar).

Note: *If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady the tire pressure does not reach 26 psi (1.8 bar) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

10. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 29–44 psi (2–3 bar), switch the compressor and the ignition off.
11. Disconnect the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from the tire valve and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: *Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.*

12. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
13. Place the warning label on the steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to wheel and correctly stow the kit in the luggage compartment.



E257942

14. Immediately drive your vehicle for 2–6 mi (3–10 km). Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).



E257121

15. After driving between 2–6 mi (3–10 km), stop your vehicle, vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 270).

Note: If the tire pressure has dropped to 26 psi (1.8 bar) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WARNING



If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 15 psi (1 bar) 18.9 psi (1.3 bar) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. Stop your vehicle after driving approximately 2 mi (3 km). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure. This could cause loss of the damaged tire. Attach the vehicle control.

The kit and read the tire pressure from the pressure gauge E. Adjust it to the specified pressure. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch G to position 0, remove the power plug F from the socket, unscrew the hose C and fasten the valve cap. Leave hose C and H connected to the sealant bottle B and store the kit away safely. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the rim, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. You must renew the sealant bottle B and hose C as soon as possible once used. Remember that the kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit may could differ from country to country. You should We recommend you consult a tire specialist for advice. Before driving, make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. You must monitor the tire pressure until the specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 124 mi (200 km) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was **sealed** ~~tire is replaced~~. Empty sealant bottles can ~~using the~~ kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must **be** ~~disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to an authorized dealer or dispose of~~ adhered to.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the wheel rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.

- Remove the sealant bottle and the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from the compressor and discard it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations. Checking the Tire Pressure Before driving, make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. Monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced. Stop your vehicle after driving about 2 mi (3 km). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire. Attach the kit and read the tire pressure from the pressure gauge E. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is 1.3 bar (19 psi) or more, adjust it to the specified pressure. Follow the inflation procedure once again to top up the tire pressure. Check the tire pressure again from the pressure gauge E. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve I. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch G to position O, remove the power plug F from the socket, unscrew the hose H, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap. Leave the sealant bottle B in the bottle holder D and store the kit away safely in its original location. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the rim, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. You must renew the sealant bottle B and hose C as soon as possible once used. Remember that this kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair after usage of the kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice. Empty sealant bottles can be

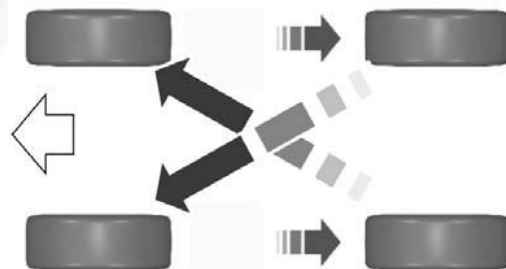
disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to an authorized dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations, or return it to an authorized dealer.

- Purchase a replacement sealant bottle and sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from an authorized dealer.

TIRE CARE (G1477846)

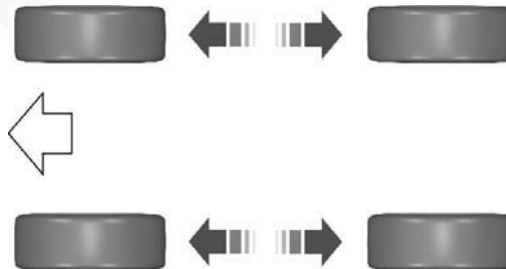
Note: Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.

Non-directional tires



E142547

Directional tires



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 3,000 mi (5,000 km) and 6,000 mi (10,000 km).

WARNING



Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

USING WINTER TIRES (G1477847)

If winter tires are used you must inflate them to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressure table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 270).

USING SNOW CHAINS (G1914658)

WARNINGS



Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 195/60 R 15.
- 195/60 R 15 ECO.

Note: Maintain correct tire pressures.

Note: The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.

Note: We recommend that you switch the stability control system off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 156).

Do not use snow chains greater than 0.4 in (10 mm).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (If Equipped) (G1928643)

WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.

Note: If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it may not function.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

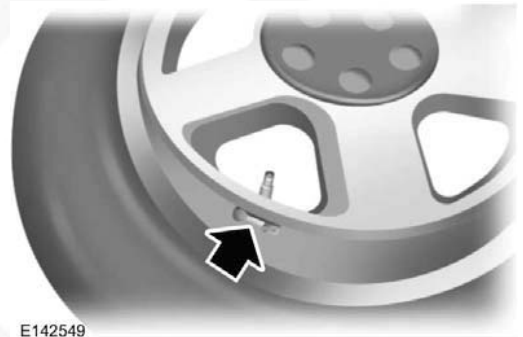
As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

Note: Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See **When Inflating Your Tires** in this chapter.

Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System

When changing the wheels of your vehicle, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to relearn the tire pressure sensors. To achieve this perform the following:

1. Make sure all tires are inflated to the proper pressure. If not, inflate the tires to the correct pressure.
2. Park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes.
3. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** later in this section.
4. The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes above 25 mph (40 km/h).

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System



The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 82). The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When Inflating Your Tires

WARNING

 Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2–4 psi (14–28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 89).
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: SPARE WHEEL (G1883131)

Lug Nuts

You can obtain replacement locking lug nuts or a locking lug nut key using the reference number certificate.

Vehicles With a Spare Wheel

WARNINGS

-  Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.
-  Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.
-  If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
-  Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

Note: Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.

Note: The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.

Note: The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

Note: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.

Note: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, drive the shortest distance possible.



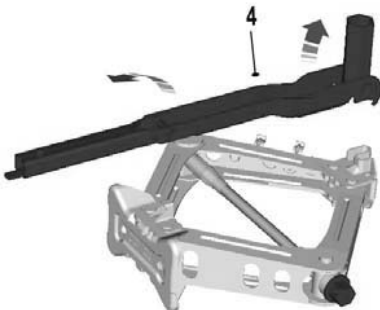
E178549

1. Turn the spare wheel securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.



E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Turn the vehicle jack screw counterclockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool from the vehicle jack.



E245204

4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the lug nuts.

Note: Use the hook at the hexagonal end to remove the wheel trim.

Vehicles Without a Spare Wheel

Vehicles without a spare wheel are fitted with a temporary mobility kit. See **Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 252).

Note: Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a spare wheel, vehicle jack or wheel brace.

Vehicle Jack

WARNINGS

-  Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.
-  Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.
-  Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.
-  Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

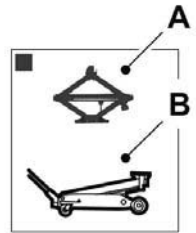
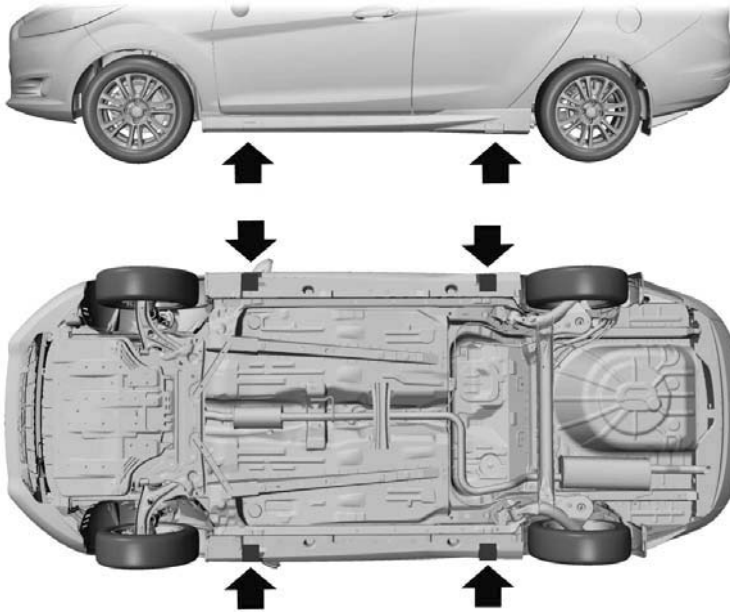
When changing between summer and winter tires, use a hydraulic floor jack.

Note: Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 3.1 in (80 mm).

Jacking and Lifting Points

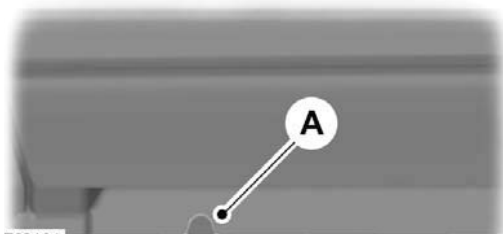
WARNING

-  You must use the specified jacking points.



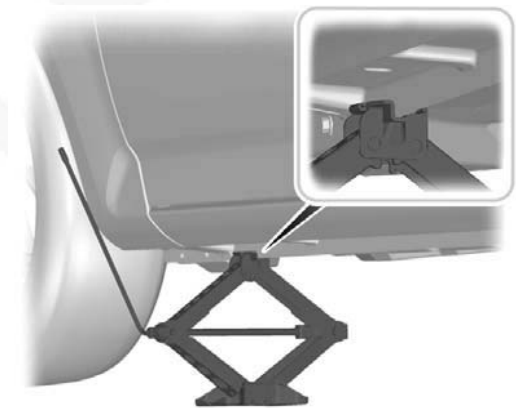
E92658

- A Emergency use only.
- B Maintenance.



E93184

Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.



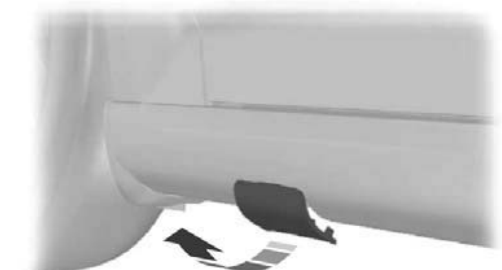
E92932

Removing the Wheel Trim



E93020

Vehicles with Side Skirts



E95345



E219698

1. Unfold the lug nut wrench.
2. Use the tongue on the lug nut wrench to remove the wheel trim.

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

-  Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.
-  Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.
-  Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.
-  If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).
-  Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

WARNINGS



Chock the diagonally opposite wheel to the punctured tire with an appropriate wheel block or wheel chock.



Do not work on your vehicle when the jack is the only support. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.



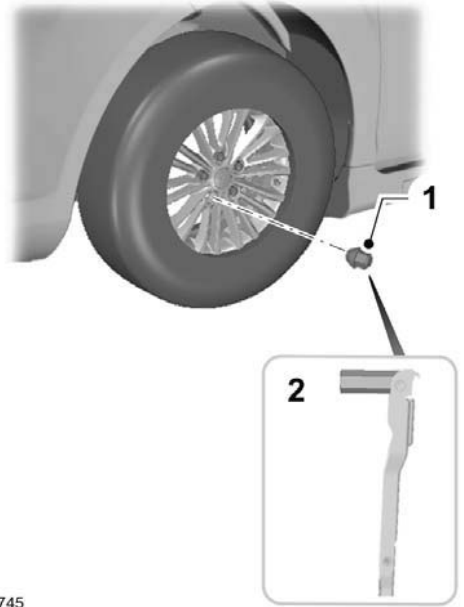
E166722

WARNING



Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

1. Install the locking lug nut key.



E181745

2. Loosen the lug nuts.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

Installing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS



Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when your vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare tire with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction have the tire refitted as soon as possible.



Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

WARNINGS



Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.



Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Contact an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.

WARNINGS



Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.



Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

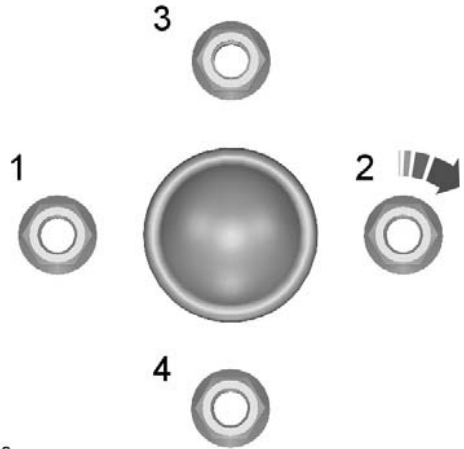


Only use the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

Note: The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

Note: Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E90589

4. Install all of the lug nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
6. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 252).
7. Install the wheel trim.

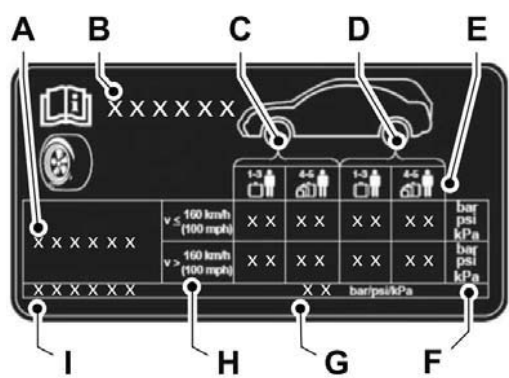
TIRE PRESSURES - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, MANUAL TRANSMISSION

(G1892350) edited

~~Tire Pressures for Speeds up to~~ The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to ~~50 mph (80 km/h)~~ remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

E254054

Up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
175/65- 195/60R15.	2.1 (30)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
R14-Tire- 195/60R15 ECO.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
Pressures- 195/55R16.	2.1 (30)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
for 205/45R17.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
Speeds- 205/40R18.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

~~up to~~ Continuous Speed in Excess of 100 mph (160 km/h) or With Trailer Towing up to 60 mph (100 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
~~195/60~~ 195/60R15.	2.1 (30)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
~~R15~~ 195/60 195/60R15 ECO.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
~~R15~~ 195/55R16.	2.1 (30)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
~~ECO~~ 205/45R17.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
~~195/55~~ 205/40R18.	2.4 (35)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

R16 205/45 R17 Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

WARNING



205/40 R18 Tire Pressures for Continuous Speeds over 100 mph (160 km/h) Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	Normal Load	psi (bar)
Full Load	Front Rear	
Front Rear		
psi 175/65R14.		3.2 (46)

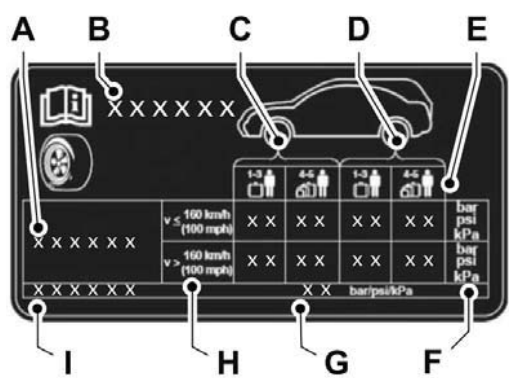
~~(bar)~~ psi (bar) psi (bar) 195/60 R15 195/60 R15 ECO 195/55 R16 205/45 R17 205/40 R18
Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

**TIRE PRESSURES - 1.0L
ECOBOOST™, AUTOMATIC
TRANSMISSION** (G1892351) **edited**

~~Tire Pressures for Speeds up to~~ The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to 50 mph (80 km/h) remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

E254054

Up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
175/65- 195/60R15.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
R14-Tire- 195/60R15 ECO.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
Pressures- 195/55R16.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
for 205/45R17.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
Speeds- 205/40R18.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

up to Continuous Speed in Excess of 100 mph (160 km/h) or With Trailer Towing up to 60 mph (100 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
~~195/60~~ 195/60R15.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
~~R15 195/60~~ 195/60R15 ECO.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
~~R15~~ 195/55R16.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
~~ECO~~ 205/45R17.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
~~195/55~~ 205/40R18.	2.4 (35)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

R16 205/45 R17 Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

WARNING



205/40 R18 Tire Pressures for Continuous Speeds over 100 mph (160 km/h) Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	Normal Load		psi (bar)
	Full Load	Front Rear	
	Front Rear		
~~psi~~ 175/65R14.			3.2 (46)

~~(bar) psi (bar) psi (bar)~~ 195/60 R15 195/60 R15 ECO 195/55 R16 205/45 R17 205/40 R18 Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

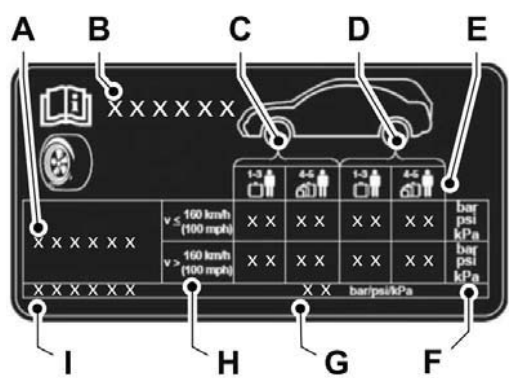
TIRE PRESSURES - 1.1L (G1868861)

edited

Tire Pressures for Speeds up to The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to 50 mph (80 km/h) remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

E254054

Up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
175/65- 195/60R15.	2.1 (30)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
R14-Tire- 195/60R15 ECO.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
Pressures- 195/55R16.	2.1 (30)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
for 205/45R17.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
Speeds- 205/40R18.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

up to Continuous Speed in Excess of 100 mph (160 km/h) or With Trailer Towing up to 60 mph (100 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
~~195/60~~ 195/60R15.	2.1 (30)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
~~R15 195/60~~ 195/60R15 ECO.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
~~R15~~ 195/55R16.	2.1 (30)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
~~ECO~~ 205/45R17.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
~~195/55~~ 205/40R18.	2.4 (35)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

R16 205/45 R17 Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

WARNING



205/40 R18 Tire Pressures for Continuous Speeds over 100 mph (160 km/h) Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	Normal Load		psi (bar)
	Full Load	Front Rear	
	Front Rear		
~~psi~~ 175/65R14.			3.2 (46)

~~(bar) psi (bar) psi (bar)~~ 195/60 R15 195/60 R15 ECO 195/55 R16 205/45 R17 205/40 R18 Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

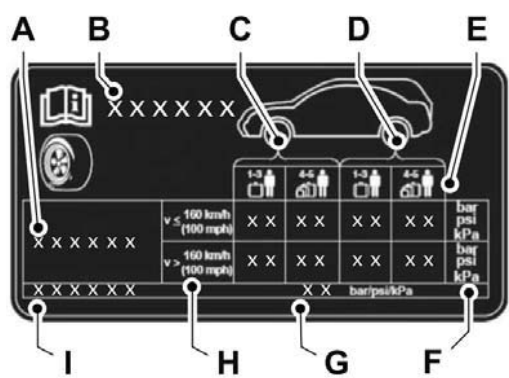
TIRE PRESSURES - 1.5L DIESEL

(G1892353) **edited**

~~Tire Pressures for Speeds up to~~ The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You may need to 50 mph (80 km/h) remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.*



- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

E254054

Up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
175/65- 195/60R15.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
R14-Tire- 195/60R15 ECO.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
Pressures- 195/55R16.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
for 205/45R17.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
Speeds- 205/40R18.	2.3 (33)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

up to Continuous Speed in Excess of 100 mph (160 km/h) or With Trailer Towing up to 60 mph (100 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
~~195/60~~ 195/60R15.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
~~R15 195/60~~ 195/60R15 ECO.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
~~R15~~ 195/55R16.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
~~ECO~~ 205/45R17.	2.3 (33)	2 (29)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)
~~195/55~~ 205/40R18.	2.4 (35)	2 (29)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

R16 205/45 R17 Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

WARNING



205/40 R18 Tire Pressures for Continuous Speeds over 100 mph (160 km/h) Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	Normal Load	psi (bar)
Full Load	Front Rear	
Front Rear		
~~psi~~ 175/65R14.		3.2 (46)

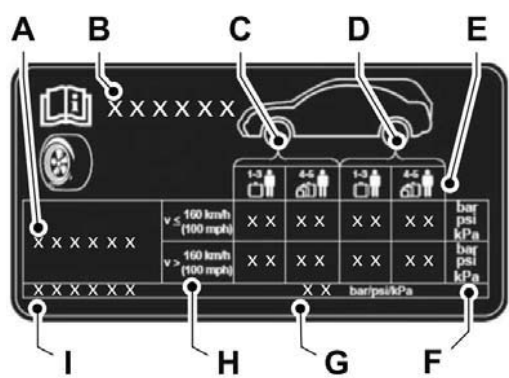
~~(bar) psi (bar) psi (bar)~~ 195/60 R15 195/60 R15 ECO 195/55 R16 205/45 R17 205/40 R18 Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

TIRE PRESSURES TIRE PRESSURES - 1.5L ECOBOOST™ (G1938064) **edited**

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

E254054

Up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
205/45R17.	2.5 (36)	1.9 (28)	2.6 (38)	2.3 (33)
205/40R18.	2.5 (36)	1.9 (28)	2.6 (38)	2.3 (33)

Continuous Speed in Excess of 100 mph (160 km/h) or With Trailer Towing up to 60 mph (100 km/h)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
205/45R17.	2.5 (36)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.3 (33)
205/40R18.	2.5 (36)	2.1 (30)	2.6 (38)	2.3 (33)

Temporary Spare Wheel

(If Equipped)

WARNING



Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	psi (bar)
T 125/80R15.	4.2 (61)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

LUG NUTS

(G1868862)

edited

Lug Nut

Wheel Type

Torque

lb.ft (Nm)
135 (100)

Att Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

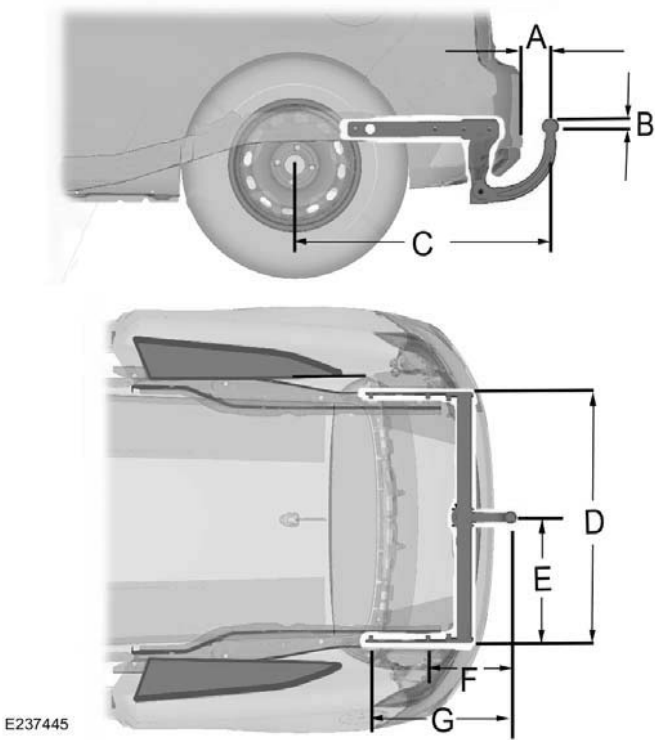
VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

(G1867992)

Dimension Description	Dimension
Maximum length.	4,040 mm (159.1 in)
Maximum width with mirrors unfolded.	1,941 mm (76.4 in)
Maximum width with mirrors folded.	1,783 mm (70.2 in)
Overall height - EC curb weight.	1,464–1,495 mm (57.6–58.9 in)
Wheelbase.	2,493 mm (98.1 in)
Front track.	1,503–1,513 mm (59.2–59.6 in)
Rear track.	1,466–1,476 mm (57.7–58.1 in)
Front ground clearance.	120–139 mm (4.7–5.5 in)
Center ground clearance.	164–181 mm (6.5–7.1 in)
Rear ground clearance.	185–201 mm (7.3–7.9 in)

TOWBAR DIMENSIONS

(G1867994)



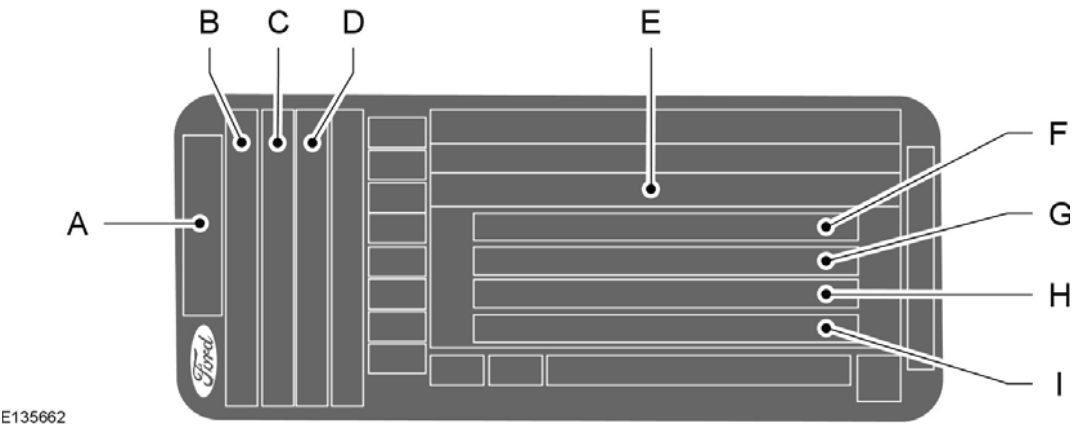
Measurement	Dimension Description	in (mm)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	75 (3.0)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	9 (0.4)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	783 (30.8)
D	Distance between side members.	1,032 (40.6)
E	Center of tow ball to side member.	516 (20.3)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	339 (13.3)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	573 (22.6)

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	lb (kg)
1.0L EcoBoost.	65 (143)
1.0L EcoBoost.	45 (99)
1.1L Duratec.	65 (143)
1.5L Duratorq-TDCi 85PS.	45 (99)
1.5L Duratorq-TDCi 120PS.	40 (88)

Vehicles with automatic transmission.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE (G1555683)



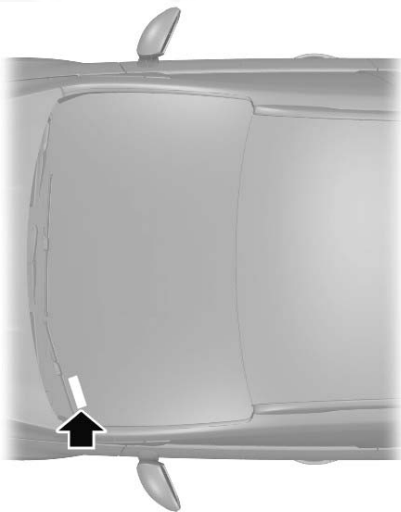
E135662

- A Model.
- B Variant.
- C Engine designation.
- D Engine power and emission level.
- E Vehicle identification number.
- F Gross vehicle weight.
- G Gross train weight.
- H Maximum front axle weight.
- I Maximum rear axle weight.

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

Note: The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.

Note: Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

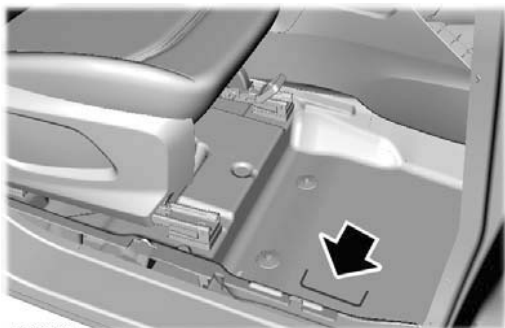


E163915

On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (G1601750)

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E163913

Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™ (G1868000)

WARNING

 The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Quantity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	4.6 L (1.01 gal)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	4.4 L (0.97 gal)
Engine coolant fill capacity.	5.8 L (1.28 gal)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	42 L (9.24 gal)
Washer system fill capacity.	3 L (0.66 gal)

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
1 L (0.2 gal)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash	WSS-M14P19-A

Specifications

Use oil and fluids that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades. Using other fluids could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Name	Specification
2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 3U7J-19523-GA, FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

Note: Do not use more than 0.3 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.1L DURATEC (G1868001) edited

Use oil and fluids- fluid that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades. Using other fluids could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the defined specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2. Do not use more than 0.3 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals. Using oil and fluids that- and viscosity grade.

If you do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to- use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage which may- not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Engine

Engine Oil

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter	Excluding the Oil Filter
All.	4.1 L (0.9 gal)	4 L (0.9 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 0.3 gal (1 L).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

Note: Do not use more than 0.3 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	5.5 L (1.2 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	42 L (9.2 gal)

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	3 L (0.7 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 3U7J-19523-GA, FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

| Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

(G1868003)

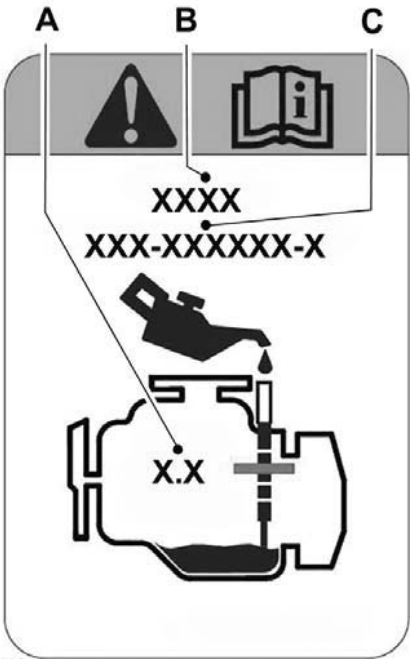
edited

WARNING

 The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Engine Oil

An engine oil viscosity grade and specification label is on the underside of the hood.



E248032

- A Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.
- B Engine oil viscosity grade.
- C Engine oil specification.

Adding Engine Oil

Only add engine oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade in small quantities of no more than 0.13 gal 0.1 gal (0.5 L).

To avoid overfilling, wait for one minute after each refill step to allow the engine oil to flow into the oil pan and register on the

engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 233).

Capacities

Item	gal (L) Quantity
Fuel tank fill capacity.	40 L (8.8 gal)
Washer system fill capacity.	3 L (0.7 gal)

Specifications

Use oil and fluids that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades. Using other fluids could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, it is acceptable to use a SAE 0W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 3U7J-19523-GA, FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to: Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™ (G1868002)

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.

- Increased emission levels.
 - Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
 - Reduced brake performance.

Engine

Engine Oil

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter	Excluding the Oil Filter
All.	4.75 L (1.0 gal)	4.25 L (0.9 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 0.2 gal (0.7 L).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2

Note: Do not use more than 0.3 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	6 L (1.3 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	45 L (9.9 gal)

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	3 L (0.7 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 3U7J-19523-GA, FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

(G1867995)

edited

Exterior Lamps

Lamp Bulb	Specification	Power (Watt) (Watts)
Front direction indicator.	~~PY21W~~ PY21W.	21
~~Daytime running lamps.~~ Front direction indicator.	H15 PY21W.	~~15/55~~ 21
~~Daytime running lamps.~~ Front direction indicator.	LED.	-
Daytime running lamp.	H15.	15/55
Daytime running lamp.	LED.	Headlamp -
~~low beam.~~ H7 Daytime running lamp.	LED.	-
Low beam headlamp.	H7.	55
~~Headlamp high beam.~~ Low beam headlamp.	H15 15/55 Head- lamp high beam. H7 H7.	55
Low beam headlamp.	LED.	-
High beam headlamp.	H15.	15/55

Lamp Bulb	Specification	Power (Watt) (Watts)
High beam headlamp.	H1.	55
High beam headlamp.	LED.	-
Front fog lamp.	H8- H8.	35
Side direction indicator.	WY5W- WY5W.	5
Brake- Rear lamp and rear- stoplamp.	lamp- P21/5W P21/5W.	21/5
Brake- Rear lamp and rear-lamp- stoplamp.	LED.	-
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	Central-high mounted stop lamp-LED-LED- -
Rear direction indicator.	PY21W- PY21W.	21
Rear fog lamp.	P21W- P21W.	21
Reversing lamps- lamp.	W16W- W16W.	16
License plate lamp.	LED.	LED- -

Reflector headlamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 242).
Projector headlamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 242).
High-series- LED headlamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 242).
LEDs- We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to replace the bulb.
High series.
Note: We recommend that you have LEDs are not serviceable. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible- changed by an authorized dealer.

Interior Lamps

Lamp Bulb	Specification	Power (Watt) (Watts)
Glove compartment lamp.	LED.	LED- -
Interior lamp.	LED.	LED- -
Vanity mirror lamp.	LED.	LED- -
Luggage compartment lamp.	LED.	LED- -

Note: We recommend that you have LEDs are not serviceable. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible- changed by an authorized dealer.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES
- 1.0L ECOBOOST™ (G1948539) edited

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
mpg (L/100 km)	mpg (L/100 km)	mpg (L/100 km)	g/km
7.4–5.4 (38.2–52.3)	4.7–3.6 (60.1–78.5)	5.7–4.3 (49.6–65.7)	97–129

We derive CO₂ and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES
- 1.1L DURATEC (G1948540) edited

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
mpg (L/100 km)	mpg (L/100 km)	mpg (L/100 km)	g/km
6.1–5.6 (46.3–50.4)	3.9–3.7 (72.4–76.3)	4.7–4.4 (60.1–64.2)	101–107

We derive CO₂ and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES
- 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL (G1948541) edited

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
mpg (L/100 km)	mpg (L/100 km)	mpg (L/100 km)	g/km
4.4–3.5 (64.2–80.7)	3.4–3 (83.1–94.2)	3.7–3.2 (76.3–88.3)	82–97

We derive CO₂ and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES **FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES** **- 1.5L ECOBOOST™** (G1948542) **edited**

| Please refer to the regional Ford website.

**AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES
WITHOUT: SYNC 3** (G1868871) edited

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



Adjusting the Volume



E248939

Selecting the Radio



Press the button to select radio mode.

Press the button again to display the available radio sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available radio sources.

Changing Radio Stations

Manual tuning-B Station name-tuning-Tuning



E248947

Note: You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the numeric preset buttons.

Selecting Media



Press the button to select media mode.

Press the button again to display the available media sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available media sources.

Scrolling Through the Menu Options



E248947

Selecting a Menu Option



E248946

Returning to the Previous Screen



Seek Up and Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.
Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Seek Down and Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.
Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Pausing or Playing Media In-radio mode, press the button to mute the signal. Press the button again to restore the signal.



In media mode, press the button to pause playback. Press the button again to resume playback.

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

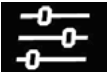
Switching the Screen On and Off



System Settings



Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the adaptive or speed compensated volume.

Using a Cell Phone



You can make a call from a recent call list, contact list or dial a number.

**AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH:
SYNC 3** (G1964279) edited

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



Adjusting the Volume Selecting the Radio- Press the button to select radio mode. Press the button again to display the available radio sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available radio sources.



E248939

**Changing Radio Stations
Manual Tuning**



E270235

Note: You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the numeric preset buttons. *Selecting Media* Press the button to select media mode. Press the button again to display the available media sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available media sources. *Scrolling Through the Menu Options- Selecting a Menu Option* Returning to the Previous Screen

Seek Up and Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Seek Down and Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Pausing or Playing Media



In media mode, press the button **Select** to pause playback. Press the button again to resume playback. Press the button again to pause the track.

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

Switching the Screen On and Off System Settings



Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume. Using a Cell Phone You can make a call from a recent call list, contact list or dial a number.

AM/FM RADIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3 (G1907904) edited

Selecting a Radio Source



Press the button to display the available radio sources.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the desired radio source.

Press the **OK** button.

Station Presets

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the numeric preset buttons.

Note: Six presets can be stored for each radio source.

Manually Changing Radio Stations



E248947

Rotate the control to change the frequency.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press the button to search for seek the next radio station. Press station up the button frequency band.

Press and hold to search for quickly seek up the previous radio frequency band.



station. Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press the **OK** button to view available stations.

**DIGITAL RADIO - VEHICLES
WITHOUT: SYNC 3** (G1868872) **edited**

Selecting a Radio Source



Press the button to display the available radio sources.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the desired radio source.

Press the **OK** button.

Station Presets

To store a station, press and hold one of the numeric preset buttons.

Note: Six presets can be stored for each radio source.

Manually Changing Stations



E248947

Rotate the control to change the station.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press the button to search for the next radio station. Press station up the button frequency band.

Press and hold to search for quickly seek up the previous radio frequency band.



station. Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press the **OK** button to view available ensembles. Select the desired ensemble and station from the list.

**AUDIO UNIT CLOCK AND DATE
DISPLAYS - VEHICLES
WITHOUT: SYNC 3** (G1907555) **edited**

Adjusting the Clock



Press the button.

Select the clock and follow the instructions on the screen. You cannot change the date.

**CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH
DEVICE - VEHICLES WITHOUT:
SYNC 3** (G1907905)

Pairing a Device



Press the button.

Select Bluetooth and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: When pairing a new device, you can choose to download contacts, set this as the primary device and enable Emergency Assistance.

COMPACT DISC PLAYER - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

(G1868873) **edited**

The compact disc player is in the glove compartment.

Compact disc players only play standard 4.7 in (12 cm) discs.

You can play ~~mp3-CDs~~ MP3 and WMA discs.

Note: Discs can contain mixed audio file types.

Note: Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable CDs may not function correctly when used in the compact disc player.

Note: You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs.

Playing a CD



Press the button to display the menu.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the compact disc player.

Press the **OK** button.



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Press the button

repeatedly to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

STREAMING BLUETOOTH AUDIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

(G1907906)

Selecting a Bluetooth Source



Press the button to display the menu.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the Bluetooth device.

Press the **OK** button.



Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Note: Not all functions are supported by all phones.

PLAYING MEDIA FROM A USB DEVICE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

(G1907907)

edited

Track and Folder Format Supported Audio File Formats

You can play audio file formats including MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Note: The NTFS file system is not supported.

Selecting the USB Device



Press the button to display the menu.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to your USB device.

Press the **OK** button.

Playing from the USB Device



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Sorting by Categories

You can also sort and play music by specific categories, for example artist or album.

Press the **OK** button to view the available categories.

USB PORT USB PORT (G1967465)

edited

USB ports may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel behind the audio unit display.
- On the instrument panel below the climate control. See **At a Glance** (page 14).
- In the center console.

You can use the USB port to charge a device only when the engine is running.

EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

(G1907968) **edited**

WARNINGS



Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional. Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.



For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.



Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Note: Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

Note: When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the settings apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.

Note: Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

Note: In case of an emergency, Emergency Assistance, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public security. Emergency Assistance does not implement the rescue operations. The local public security department deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 32). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.

- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: This feature only works in a European country or region where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

In the Event of a Crash

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

Note: Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, which may turn on Emergency Assistance. However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

Note: During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

Note: It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

Note: It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

Note: The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from Emergency Assistance.

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Important Information about the About Emergency Assistance

Feature- Emergency assistance Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets:- countries:

- Albania, Albania.
- Belarus, Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.

- ~~Bosnia and Herzegovina, Herzegovina.~~
- ~~Macedonia, Georgia.~~
- ~~Netherlands, Macedonia.~~
- ~~Ukraine, Moldova.~~
- ~~Moldova, Netherlands.~~
- ~~and Russia.~~
- ~~For more information, visit the regional Ford website. Ukraine.~~

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

(G1907969) edited

Phone Voice Service

This system allows you to use the voice recognition features of your phone and focus on your driving.



Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel.

Note: *This only works when connected via Bluetooth. See **Connecting a Bluetooth Device** (page 301).*

Note: *When using voice recognition use the language set on the device.*

GENERAL INFORMATION (G1824128)

edited

WARNING

 Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Getting to Know Your System About SYNC

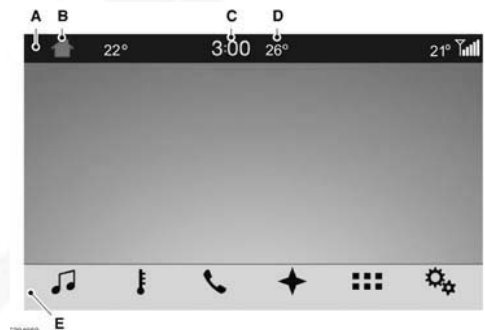
The system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands, commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

Note: You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

Note: You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

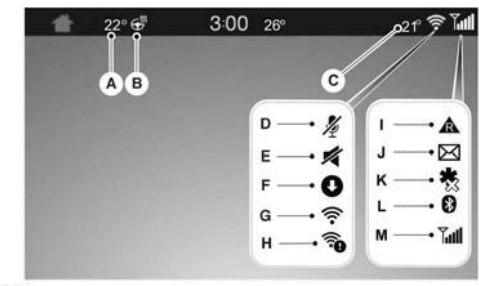
Using the Touchscreen To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button changes color to show it has been selected. Item Menu Item Action and Description



- A Status Bar This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages. bar.
- B Home This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view. screen. See **Home Screen** (page 320).
- C Clock This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. Clock. See **Settings** (page 366).

- D **Outside Temperature** This displays the current outside air temperature.
- E **Feature Bar** You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature. Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open). The bar.

Status Bar



1224061

Driver Temperature This
Left-hand side temperature.

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market; vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active. Callout Item Description

A

Heated steering wheel (If on.

shows the temperature the driver selects through the climate control system.

B

equipped) Passenger Temperature When Right-hand side temperature. you activate the heated steering wheel option on the touch screen; this icon displays. It only displays when there is not a physical button for the heated steering wheel.

C

the Microphone Mute This icon displays when your phone's Cell phone microphone is muted. has been adjusted and is no longer linked to the driver's temperature, it displays here. If Dual is turned off and the temperatures are linked, the passenger's temperature does not display.

D

A caller Mute This icon displays when the audio Audio system is muted. hear you. E

F Software Update This icon appears when the system has received a software update. Pressing the icon shows more details about the new software: update installed.

G Wi-Fi This icon appears if a Wi-Fi network is connected.

H Wi-Fi in Range An available Wi-Fi network is within range: networks available.

I Roaming This icon displays when your cell Cell phone is roaming.

J Text Message This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone: received.

K Emergency Assistance This icon displays when Emergency Assistance is set to off and your phone is connected to SYNC: off.

L Bluetooth This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection: connection active.

M Signal Strength This icon displays the Cell phone network coverage of signal strength.

Note: *the connected phone: Messages may also appear in the status bar bar. to provide you with notifications. You can select Select the message to view use the associated feature.*

Feature Bar



Feature Bar Item Functions Allows you Select to control use the media including AM, FM and DAB radio, CDs, and media streaming over the CD player, a Bluetooth device USB, a media player or through a USB connection. Allows you to adjust the temperature, fan speed and airflow within the vehicle. (Optional) Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected a Bluetooth device. See **Entertainment** (page 345).



Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route. (If equipped) Connect and control use the climate controls.

Note: *Not available through the system compatible apps running on your iPhone or Android device. You can customize your system settings on all models.*



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 350).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 354).



Select to search for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle. Use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 364).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 366).

Cleaning the Touchscreen You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth. If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen. Using Voice Recognition Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction. The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. Using the Steering Wheel Controls Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways. **VOL:** Control the volume of audio output. **Mute:** Mute the audio output. **Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session. **SEEK NEXT:** While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets. While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek. **SEEK PREVIOUS:** While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets. While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek. **PHONE ACCEPT:** Press to answer a call or

switch between calls. **PHONE REJECT:** Press to end a call or reject an incoming call. On some models, **SEEK NEXT** may be combined with **PHONE REJECT** and **SEEK PREVIOUS** may be combined with **PHONE ACCEPT**. **M:** Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media sources (modes). Using Your Bezel Controls Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel. **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off. **VOL:** Control the volume of playing audio. **Seek and Tune:** Use as you normally would in audio modes. **Eject:** Eject a CD from the audio system. **SOURCE or MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to advance through available media modes. **SOUND:** Press to access the Sound menu where you can adjust sound and other audio settings. **1-6:** Press and hold to store or press to select an AM, FM or DAB memory preset. **DISP:** Switch the display on or off. You can also touch the screen to switch the display back on. Temperature, fan and climate control buttons: Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system.

See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 249).

Emergency Assistance

WARNINGS



Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

WARNINGS



Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.



Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.



For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.

Note: Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

Note: When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the settings apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.

Note: Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Note: In case of an emergency, Emergency Assistance, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public security. Emergency Assistance does not implement the rescue operations. The local public security department deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 32). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 366).

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: This feature only works in a *European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.*

In the Event of a Crash

Note: Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, which may turn on Emergency Assistance. However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.

Before making- Making a call- Call

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call- Call

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

Note: During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

Note: It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

Note: It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a ~~European~~ country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Important Information about the About Emergency Assistance

~~Feature~~ Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following ~~markets~~ countries:

- ~~Albania~~, Albania.
- ~~Belarus~~, Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina, Herzegovina.
- Macedonia, Georgia.
- ~~Netherlands~~, Macedonia.
- ~~Ukraine~~, Moldova.
- ~~Moldova~~ Netherlands.
- ~~and~~ Russia.
- For more information, visit the regional ~~Ford website~~ Ukraine.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

Safety Information

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.

Updating Your the System

You can choose to download the update onto- **Updating the System Using a USB drive Drive**

or use Wi-Fi Downloading an Update

1. Go to deliver automatic updates. USB Updates To use the USB update visit the SYNC software update page on your the regional Ford website.

Note: The website notifies you if an update is available.

3. You can then select to download the update. You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive. The installation of most files occurs in the background, and it does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation updates cannot be installed in the background because the files are too large. To install the system update in your vehicle: Remove anything that is plugged into the USB ports. Plug the USB drive containing the update into Insert a USB port. The installation begins immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started. Please reference the website for any further actions. Updating Over Wi-Fi To update your System over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply. To connect your system to Wi-Fi, select: Menu Item You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network. You must also give the system permission

to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the system asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery, you can access it through the General Settings and drive into your computer.

Note: The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on switch the automatic system updates option. If you would like to switch on automatic updating later, select: Menu Item From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature. You can switch off this feature from this menu if you decide to shut off automatic updates in the future. When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for a few ignition cycles. Support For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

Installing an Update

Note: You can use the system when an installation is in progress.

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

Note: *Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.*

Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select .

Select .

Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

Switching Automatic System Updates On



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select .

Select .

Switch automatic system updates on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Note: *You can use the system when a download is in progress.*

Note: *If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when a download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.*

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the regional Ford website.

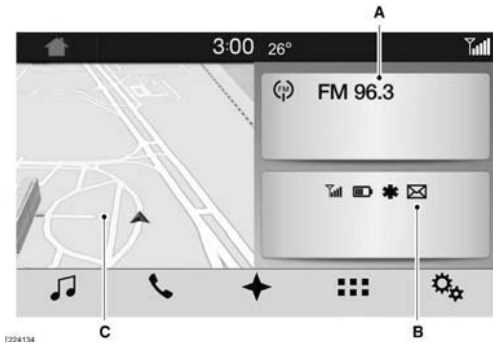
Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to the system, it creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur. The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a **Master Reset** master reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in **General Settings**. See **Settings** (page 366). System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module. Ford Motor Company does not access the system data for any purpose other than as described.

absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company.

HOME SCREEN (G1824129) edited



A Audio Shows the active media source. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the compass.

See **Phone** (page 350).

B

Phone
The
name
of the
connected
phone
appears
on the
screen:

The
status
of the
phone
features
also
appear:

This
includes
signal
strength,
battery
charge,
Emergency
Assistance
setting
state
(On or
Off),
new
text
messages
and
roaming:

See **Navigation** (page 354).

C
Navigation
This
map
displays
your
current
location
or
current
route in
real
time.
When
you
have
navigation
active
you can
see the
next
turn on
your
route.
If your
vehicle
does
not
have
navigation,
this
space
contains
the
audio
information.
If
equipped.
You
can
touch
any of
the
feature
displays
to
access

that
feature.
Anytime
you
select
the
home
button,
the
system
returns
you to
this
screen.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

(G1824130) edited

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

Note: Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

Note: Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following are some of the voice commands that you can say at any time screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

during a voice command session:- The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a

complete list of voice commands, refer to the regional Ford website.

Draft

| General

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Draft

Add the name of the feature to the command.

Entertainment

Audio Source

Voice Command	Description
Radio	Use the radio.
CD Player	Use the CD player.
Bluetooth audio	Use a Bluetooth device.
USB	Use a USB or media player.

Radio

Voice Command	Description
AM	Listen to AM radio.
__ AM	Tune to a specific AM frequency.
DAB	Listen to DAB radio.
FM	Listen to FM radio.
__ FM	Tune to a specific FM frequency.

Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

USB and Media Player

Voice Command	Description
Browse all albums	Browse your music.
Browse all artists	
Browse all audiobooks	
Browse all genres	
Browse all playlists	
Browse all podcasts	
Browse all tracks	
Browse album ____	Browse your music by category.
Browse artist ____	
Browse audiobook ____	
Browse genre ____	
Browse playlist ____	
Browse podcast ____	
Play album ____	Play your music by category.
Play artist ____	
Play genre ____	
Play playlist ____	
Play song ____	

Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

Climate Control

Note: Not available through the system on all models.

Voice Command	Description
Set temperature to ___ °F	Set a temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C).
Max temperature	Set the temperature to maximum.
Min temperature	Set the temperature to minimum.

Add the required temperature to the command.

Phone

Voice Command	Description
Pair phone	Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth enabled device.
Redial	Redial the last number that you dialed.
Dial ___	Dial a number.
Call ___	Call a specific contact from your phonebook.
Call ___ ___	Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location.
Listen to message	Listen to a text message.
Listen to message ___	Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.
Reply to message	Reply to the last text message.

Add the number you want to dial to the command.

Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and the last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

| **Navigation (If Equipped)**

| **Setting a Destination**

Voice Command	Description
Find an address	Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city.
Find a POI	Search for a point of interest by name or by category.
Find nearest ____	Search for a nearby point of interest by category.
Find a POI category	Search for a point of interest category.
Destination home	Set your saved home address as your destination.
Destination work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Favourite destinations	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

| Add a point of interest name or category to the command.

| **Route Guidance**

Voice Command	Description
Cancel route	Cancel the current route.
Reroute	Select an alternate route.
Repeat last instruction	Repeat the last guidance prompt.
Show route	Display an overview of the route.
Show traffic	Display a list of traffic events on your route.
Show all traffic	Display a list of all traffic events.
Show map	Display the map on the touchscreen.
Show north up	Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show heading up	Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show 3D	Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

| Apps

| General

Voice Command	Description
Mobile apps	Start an app. The system prompts your for the app name.
List apps	Get a list of apps running on your device.
Find apps	Search and connect to apps running on your device.

| Active App

Voice Command	Description
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific app.
Close ___	Close an app.

| Add an app name to the command.

| Voice Settings

Voice Command	Description
Voice settings	Go to the voice settings menu.
Interaction mode standard	Switch long voice prompts on.
Interaction mode advanced	Switch short voice prompts on.
Call confirmation on	Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.
Call confirmation off	Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call.
Voice command lists on	Display the display of voice commands on.
Voice command lists off	Switch the display of voice commands off.

Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

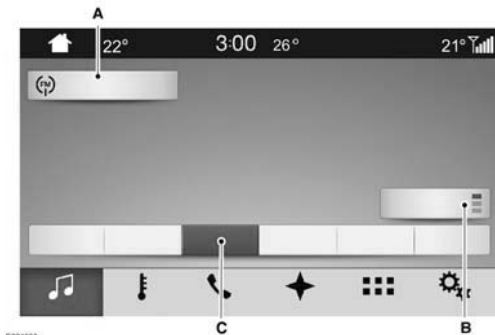
Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **and recirculated air** buttons simultaneously. Release the buttons, and then increase the fan speed within a few seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence: buttons.

ENTERTAINMENT (G1824131) edited



Item Message-Description
Select the entertainment option on the feature bar.



- A This displays your selected media- Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B This allows you- Select to select the preset bank you want to view- show a different set of presets.
- C Preset- Presets.

This shows you Using the stations that you have saved as presets. You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands. The available options may change depending on the source that you select. These options may include: Message and description A popup appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. Allows you to switch Traffic Announcements on and off. Stations A list of all available radio stations appears. You can select a station by pressing any list entry on the touchscreen. For more entries, you can scroll down using the up and down arrows, the slider or by swiping down the list. Sources Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to. **AM/FM/DAB Radio**

Tuning a Station You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station. To tune a station using the touchscreen, select: Menu item A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. Station List A list of all available radio stations appears. You can select a station by pressing any list entry on the touchscreen. For a longer list, you can scroll up and down using the up and down arrows, the slider or by swiping up or down the list. You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number. Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select: Menu item Action and description Press to begin playing the station you have entered. Press to exit without changing the station. Presets To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns. Preset Banks There are two preset banks available for AM, three banks for FM and three banks for DAB. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing. CD Once you select this source, the system returns you to the main audio screen. The current audio information appears on the screen. The following buttons are also available: Button Function You can use the browse button to select a track. **Using the Touchscreen**

Directly Tuning a Radio Station

Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat. For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays). Shuffle Select the shuffle

symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order. You can use the SEEK next, SEEK previous, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback. Bluetooth Audio Bluetooth audio may allow you to access media that you store on your bluetooth device. This is a phone-dependent feature. Visit your regional Ford website to verify your phone's compatibility. To use bluetooth audio, your phone .

Select or .

Select .

Enter the frequency of the radio station and select .

Note: You must be paired. The following buttons are available for Bluetooth: Button Function Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one). Shuffle Play the tracks in random order. You can use the SEEK next, SEEK previous, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback. To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button. While playing audio enter the frequency to two decimal places.

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

Select .

Select or .

Select .

Select a radio station from a bluetooth device you can look for certain music by selecting the following: Button Function the list.

Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select .

Note: If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist. This feature is dependent on your device and the active media player on the connected device. This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories. The categories are provided by the connected device. They may differ depending on the device. This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing. If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device. USB or iPod USB allows you to access media that you store on your USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts. The following buttons are available for USB and iPod: Button Function Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one). Shuffle Play the tracks in random order. You can use the SEEK next, SEEK previous, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback. To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button. For some devices, the system is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track. While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following: Button Function If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist. This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories. This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing. If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device. USB Ports The USB ports are in the center console or in the instrument panel. This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory

sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices- you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

Storing a Radio Station

You can use the different sets of presets to allow different drivers to store their favorite radio stations.

Set a radio station.

Select .

Note: Only do this if they support this feature. Select this option to play audio from your- you wish to select a different set of presets.

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: The radio briefly mutes to indicate the radio station has been stored.

Using the CD Player

Select .

Select .

Searching for Tracks on a CD

Select .

Select a track.

Repeating Tracks on a CD



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format CD. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a MP3 format CD.

Note: A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat

Playing Tracks on a CD in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device

Check the compatibility of your device on the regional Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 350).

Select .



Select Bluetooth.

Searching for Tracks on a Bluetooth Device

Select .

Select a track.

Note: Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

Repeating Tracks on a Bluetooth Device



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format Bluetooth device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on an MP3 format Bluetooth device.

Note: A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat

Playing Tracks on a Bluetooth Device in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Playing Music From a USB device. Supported or Media Players, Player

Formats and Metadata Information The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and Connect your device to a USB port.

Select .



Select USB.

Note: The system indexes your music before you can play it.

Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select .

Select a track.

Note: Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

Note: You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.

Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on an MP3 format USB or media player.

Note: A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat

Supported Devices

The system supports most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC. Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC. Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS. The system is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file. If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, the system may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown. The system is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

Supported Audio File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50,000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

PHONE (G1823158) edited

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cellphone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellphone's functionality. Check the regional Ford website.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode. Switch on Bluetooth on your device. Go to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary. To add a phone, select: Menu Item This is on the phone feature screen or you can use the voice command. Follow the on-screen instructions. A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle model on your phone. Select your vehicle model as it displays on your phone. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission

to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website. Alternatively, to add a phone, select: Menu Item Then select: Follow the on-screen instructions. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website. At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions: Answering an incoming call. Ending a call. Dialing a number. Call waiting notification. Caller identification. Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the regional ford website. Phone Menu This menu becomes available after pairing a phone. Item Menu Item Action and Description A Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list. You can also sort the calls by touching the drop down menu at the top of the touchscreen. You can choose: B All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order. Touch this button to choose a specific letter to view. C Phone Settings Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone- the settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices and set ring tones and alerts. D Displays all recent text messages, if supported by your phone. E Use this keypad to dial a phone number. Touch the backspace button to delete the last digit you typed. Touch this button to begin a call. F Touch this button to send all calls directly to your voicemail. New text message notifications are not displayed

on the touchscreen and all ringtones and alerts are set to silent. If your phone has a voice assistant feature, you may see a button to access it in the menu. You can also press and hold the voice button on the steering wheel to use this feature. Making Calls There are many ways to make calls from the system, including using voice commands. To call a number in your contacts, select: Menu Item Action and Description Select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. To call a number from your recent calls, select: Menu Item Action and Description You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call. To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select: Menu Item Action and Description Select the digits of the number you wish to call. The system begins the call. Touch the backspace button to delete the last digit you typed. Receiving Calls During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears on the touchscreen if it is available. To accept the call, select: Menu Item You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel. To reject the call, select: Menu Item You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel. Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call. During a Phone Call During a phone call, the contact's name and number display on the touchscreen. The phone status items are also visible: Signal strength. Battery. Emergency Assistance. You can select any of the following during an active phone call: Menu Item Action and Description Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel. Press to access the phone keypad. You can menu on your cell phone and switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you. Transfer the call to the Bluetooth on.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

Select .

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your ~~cell phone or back to the system.~~ phone.

Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

Using Your Cell Phone

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Alphabetically sort your contacts. See **Settings** (page 366).

Phone settings

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another phone.

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Text Messaging

Downloading and replying to text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features. Receiving a Setting Text Message If Notification

supported iOS

1. by your cell phone, when a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and Go to the touchscreen displays a pop-up with settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the caller identification. You can select information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile .
5. Switch text message notification on.

Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	The system reads the message to you. View the text on the touchscreen. To call the sender. Select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message.
View	The system confirms when the message is sent successfully. To exit the touchscreen. Smartphone Connectivity SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone. When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can: Make calls. Send and receive messages. Listen to music. Use your phone's voice assistant. Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features. Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data. View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended. Plug Connect your phone into a USB port. Follow the prompts on the touchscreen. Follow the prompts that appear on your phone to allow access to Apple CarPlay. After completing the setup, your phone connects to CarPlay automatically when plugged into a USB port. To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select: Menu Item Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name to a USB port.

Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of your device and select: To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app. Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support. the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

Switching Apple CarPlay Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select .

Select from the dropdown menu.

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer. Download the Android Auto app to Connect your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage). The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market. To switch this feature on from the Settings screen, scroll left on the screen and select: Menu Item Android Auto must be switched on prior to plugging your device. You can then plug your device into to a USB port.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select: Menu Item Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select: You may Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: You might need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select or. To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Switching Android Auto Off



Select the settings option to return to SYNC. Contact Google for Android Auto support. on the feature bar.

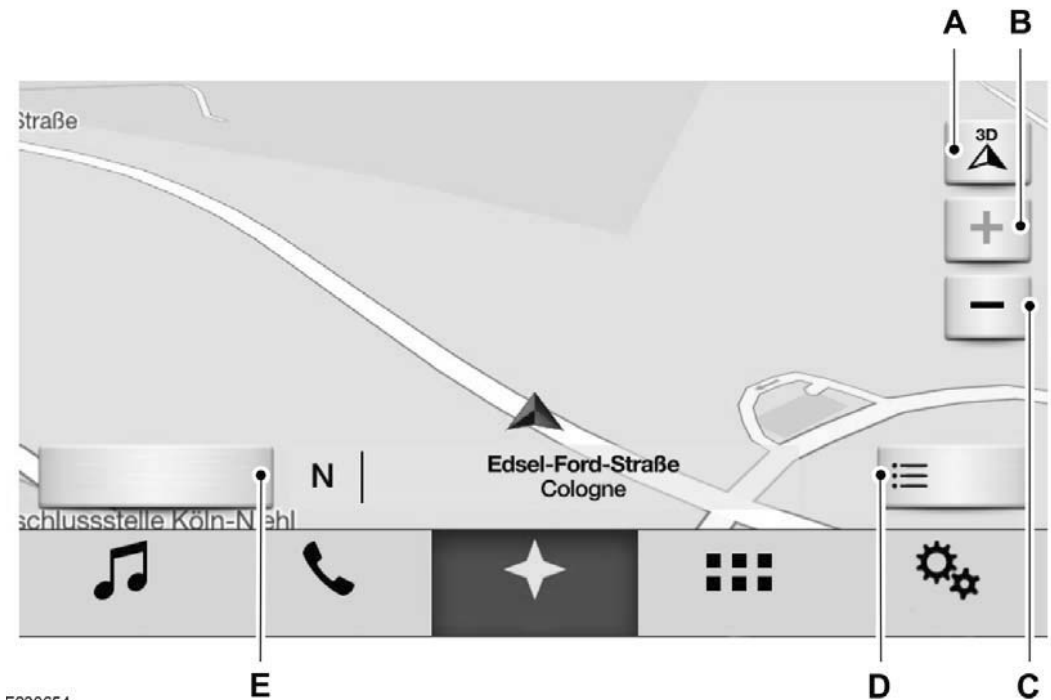
Select .
Select from the dropdown menu.

NAVIGATION (G1823159) edited

Note: Your navigation system can be shown in three modes, Map Mode, Destination Mode, and Map Search Mode Map Mode Map mode appears in 2D or 3D view and shows For more information, refer to the current position of regional Ford website.



your vehicle Select the navigation option on the map: Callout Item Description feature bar.



E230654

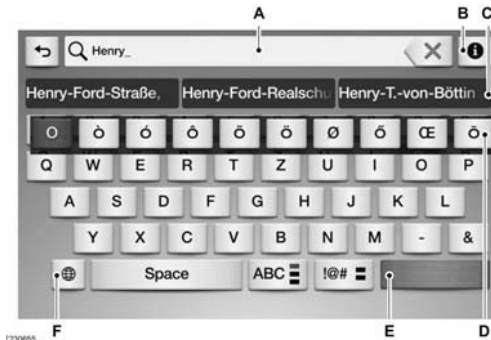
- | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
| A | <p>Map view Heading-up (2D)
Shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. North-up (2D) Shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen. 3D map mode Provides an electrical perspective of the map in the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. menu.</p> | C | <p>Zoom out Select the zoom out button to see a farther away view of the map or change to auto zoom. You can also use a pinch gesture to zoom out.</p> |
| B | <p>Zoom in Select the zoom in button to see a closer view of the map or change to auto zoom. You can also use a pinch gesture to zoom in.</p> | D | <p>Route overview- guidance menu.</p> |
| E | <p>Destination Mode To- entry menu.</p> | C | <p>Zoom out Select the zoom out button to see a farther away view of the map or change to auto zoom. You can also use a pinch gesture to zoom out.</p> |

| set- Setting a destination,press: Destination

| Destination Entry Menu

Item	Description
Search	Pressing this button (Callout E above) provides a list of different search options for a destination. You can then select: Pressing this button allows you to set a destination using the free text search. More information on this option is available in the next table. Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination. Select this option to remove all previous destinations. Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays. To set your Home, press: A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select: Enter a location into the search bar destination address.
Previous destinations	Display and press: Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel select from your current location to Work displays. To set your Work: A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select: Enter a location into the search bar and press: Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites: Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar. Select this option to have the system locate the a list of previous destinations.
Home	Set your saved home address you have entered. Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen. Point of Interest (POI) Categories POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration): Food Hotel ATM See All Press to view additional categories. Inside of these categories you can search by: Free as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Favourites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

Setting a Destination Using the Text Search Callout Entry Screen



Provide more info about the search input:

C

D

Auto-Suggest-Gives auto suggested destinations to select as you type. Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.

Key pop-up Extended keyboard.

Item Description
A Search bar You can enter a navigation destination in the following formats: number street city (country) street number city (country) Providing the country name is only required when you are entering an address for a country other than the country you are currently located in. Examples: Germany: Henry-Ford-Straße 1 Köln England: CM13 3BW France: 55 Rue du Faubourg Saint-Honoré Paris or (name or category) (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2) Latitude and Longitude (##.##### , ##.#####) This is in a decimal degrees format, one to six decimal places are accepted. Text entry field.

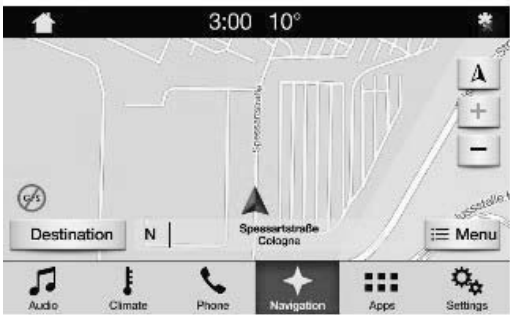
B Info icon Information icon.

Along Search.
press
on a
key
provides
the
variant
of the
letter if
available.
E Press
this
button
to
execute
a
search.
If your
search
provides
multiple
results;
SYNC
will give
you a
list of
the
best
matching
destinations
E

F Keyboard switch Provides a list
of available keyboard layouts
Route Guidance Mode Once you
have chosen your destination it
displays on the map and you can
select: Menu Item Action and
Description Select this option to

start the route guidance. Per
default, SYNC selects the
preferred route (the default is to
use the fastest route). You can
update this in the Navigation
settings.

Note: *This saves the destination- Select
one of the suggestions to your favorites.
Callout Item Description A Next Turn Press
the maneuver icon to repeat the next
guidance instruction. B Point of Interest
You can choose up to three POI categories
to display on the map. If the chosen POIs
are close together or are at the same
location, a box is used to display a single
category icon instead of repeating the
same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When
you select the box on the map, a pop-up
appears indicating how many POIs are in
this location. Select the pop-up to see a
list of the available POIs. You can scroll
through and select POIs from this list.
Note: If your vehicle is low on charge or
fuel, station icons automatically display
on the map. C Estimated Time of Arrival
Press this icon to switch between
estimated time of arrival, kilometers to
destination or time to copy the detail to
the text entry field.*



Select .
Select and enter your destination.

Note: D Bottom Bar Displays the current road if available. E Mute Press this button to mute the voice guidance instructions. You can select between three guidance prompt options. You can enter a destination in a number of formats, for example city street number, city number street, zip code or point of interest.

Note: You do not have to enter the destination country.

Note: To change the voice prompt volume, turn the volume knob when a voice guidance prompt plays. enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example ä or é, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.

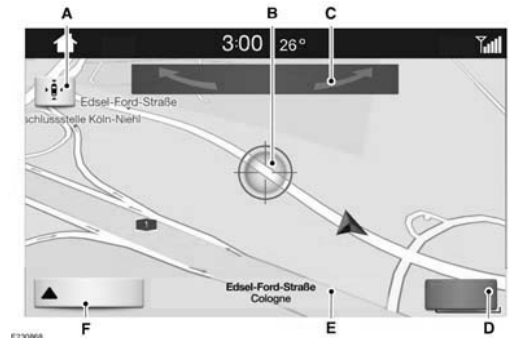
Note: You can delete text if you make an error by selecting backspace.

Select .

Select to begin route guidance.

Note: Press the button in the top right-hand corner of the main map to display estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time or distance to destination.

Setting a Destination Using the Map search Screen



Mode	Re-center
Callout	Press this button to re-center the map to the current position of the vehicle. You are taken to the previous active navigation mode (map mode or route guidance mode).
Item	
Description	
A	Crosshair Shows the selected location on the map. You can swipe or use pinch to readjust it.
B	Selected location.
C	3D mode is active. map rotation. Swipe over the bar to rotate the map to the left or right.
D	Push this button to select your destination.
E	Bottom bar This bar displays the name of the destination you select. Start route guidance.
F	Destination name.
	Press this button to fade in the Show feature bar.

and navigation buttons. Navigation Menu In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu. During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons. To access the Navigation menu, press: Button You can then select: A full screen map displays during navigation. Exit information displays on the right hand side of the screen during navigation. Points of interest icons display for restaurants, hotels, fuel stations and ATMs when they are present at the exit. You can select the POI icons to receive a listing of specific locations. You can select the POI. Select the location as a waypoint or destination if desired. Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press: The system calculates a new route on the map.

Select to begin route and displays a new turn list. Press this button to adjust your preferences. Provides your current city and the nearest road. The guidance.

Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route: The system asks for confirmation and then returns you to the map mode screen. Press this to see a map of the full route. An alternate route displays in comparison formats:

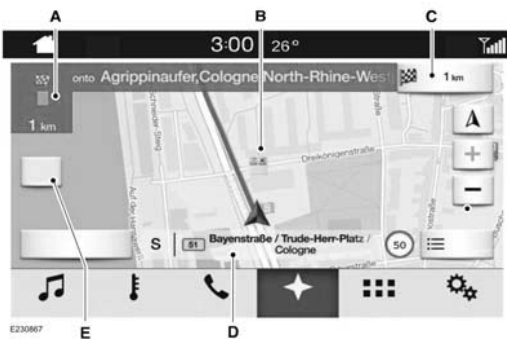
- A two-dimensional map with the current route. Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See Waypoints later in this section for information on how to set waypoints. Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints. The system sets the order for you. Waypoint items Press any waypoint item to direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

Note: You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move up or down or to delete the item from the list. Proceeds them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

Route Guidance



- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last voice prompt.
- B Point of interest.
- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.

Note: To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

Route Guidance Menu

Menu Item	Description
Screen view	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Motorway exit info	View highway exit information for your current route.
Turn list	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Navigation settings	Adjust navigation settings. See Settings (page 366).
Where am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel route	Cancel route guidance.
Show route	View the entire current route on the a map.
Re-route	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimise order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Start	Go to the next screen, where you can screen and start the new route.

Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.

Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

Note: The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.

Note: When you mute guidance prompts, the color of the symbol changes to green.

Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. Up to five waypoints can be added by repeating the process steps below. To add a waypoint: Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, set the destination as a waypoint by selecting: Menu Item. The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the a destination.
3. Select .
4. Select .

Canceling Route Guidance



Select the route guidance menu icon option on the right hand side of the location active guidance screen.

Select .



Note: The system sets the order for you. Waypoint items Press any waypoint item to move up or down or to delete the item from the list. Proceeds to the next screen, where you can start the new route. route guidance menu option is always in the bottom right-hand corner of the main map.

Michelin Travel Guide (If Equipped)

The Michelin travel guide is a service which provides additional information about certain places of interests (POI) such as interest, for example restaurants, hotels and touristic sites- tourist sites. (if available). POIs- Points of interest that have Michelin travel guide information display a button to show you more information. Push that button to see the button to see the additional information. If you have paired your phone with the system, you can press the phone button to directly establish a call with the selected POI. Not all features are available in all languages and countries- point of interest.

Navigation Map Updates Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

APPS (G1823160) edited

Draft

Note: For more information on about available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the regional Ford website. Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle. We encourage you to review the smartphone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data. AppLink is a native SYNC system feature. Accessing mobile apps through AppLink is only possible when Android Auto or Apple CarPlay are disabled. Some apps may only be accessible in the car through AppLink and others only through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. Please refer to the Smartphone Connectivity information to disable Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. In order to use an app with the system, the app needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on the system as well. If an AppLink-compatible app is not shown in the apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device. Menu Item Action and Description The system searches and connects to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device. Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device. The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, odometer, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain this data for only as long as necessary to provide this service; troubleshoot, and improve products and services and to offer you products and

services that may interest you where allowed by law. Updates to app permissions may take place automatically. You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system. Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network. You can enable and disable apps through settings. App Permissions The system organizes the app permissions into groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group. regional Ford website.

When you launch start an app using SYNC 3, it may ask you through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions; permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 366).

Note: We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control. You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3. If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu. could result in additional charges.

Note: We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

Note: Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

Note: Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

- 1. Switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 350).
- 2. Connect your device to a USB port.
- 3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

- 4. Select .

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

- 5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

- 1. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 350).
- 2. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 350).
- 3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

- 4. Select .

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

- 5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

SETTINGS (G1823161) edited

General

Item	Select to have the touchscreen display in one of the selectable languages. Select to display units in kilometers or miles. Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit. Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen. When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available an Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection. Information pertaining to the system and its software. Documentation of the software license for the system. Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data. Wi-Fi You can adjust the following: Menu Item Action and Description
Language	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for software updates to the system. This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range. Clicking Set the language.
Measure unit	Set the distance unit.
Temperature unit	Set the temperature unit.
Touchscreen beep	Switch touchscreen tones on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect. When you click the and off.
Automatic system updates	Switch automatic updates on and off.
About SYNC	View information button next to a network; more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type. The system alerts you when and software.

Item	Select to have the touchscreen display in one of the selectable languages. Select to display units in kilometers or miles. Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit. Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen. When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available an Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection. Information pertaining to the system and its software. Documentation of the software license for the system. Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data. Wi-Fi You can adjust the following: Menu Item Action and Description
Software licences	View information about the software license.
Master reset	Reset all settings to factory levels.

This resets all settings and deletes your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected. Ambient Lighting Tap a color once to activate ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity. You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity. To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity. Vehicle You vehicle may not have all of these features. Door Keypad Code (If Equipped) Select this button to add or erase a personal door keypad code. To add or erase a personal code, you first need to enter the five-digit factory set code. You can find this code on the owner's wallet card in the glove box or from your authorized dealer. Camera Settings (If Equipped) To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select: Message Action and Description Then select from the following: You can enable or disable this option using the slider. When this option is on, the rear view camera display is shown for a short time after you shift the vehicle into drive. Allows you to switch the park aid feature on and off from the rear view camera screen. data.

Display

Item	Action and Description
Brightness	Make Adjust the screen display brighter brightness.
Mode	or dimmer. This is Set a separate setting from the adjustments you make through the instrument cluster. You can select: The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level. The screen displays with a light background, a dark background to enhance daytime viewing. The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier. The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen. Enable this option to automatically dim or have the system adjust the background based on how dark it is.
Display off	Switch the display off.
Auto dim	Have the system adjust the display brightness based on how dark it is.

This does not change the brightness that you set through the information display. Touch the screen to switch the display back on.

Sound

Item	Description
Reset all	Reset all sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjust treble frequency sounds.
Mid-range	Adjust mid-range frequency sounds.
Bass	Adjust bass frequency sounds.
Balance/Fade	Adjust the sound ratio from side to side and front to rear.
Adaptive volume	Adjust the amount that the volume increases as your vehicle speed increases.
DSP occupancy	Optimize sound for certain seating positions.
Sound mode	Switch stereo and surround sound on and off.

| Media Player

Item	Description
Podcast speed	Adjust the playback speed of podcasts on some iOS devices.
Audiobook playback speed	Adjust the playback speed of audiobooks on some iOS devices.
Cover Art priority	Displays the cover art from the files on your device. If the files on your device do not contain cover art, the system displays Gracenote cover art.
Gracenote® management	Switch the provision of metadata from Gracenote on and off.
Gracenote® database info	View information about Gracenote.
Device information	View information about your media player software license.
Reset media index	Delete the metadata that the system holds about the files on your device to allow re-indexing.

| Clock

Item	Submenu Item
Clock format	Set how time displays.
Auto time zone update	Set the clock to adjust to time zone changes.
Reset clock to GPS time	Set the clock to adjust GPS satellite changes.

| The system automatically saves any updates you make to these settings.

| Bluetooth

Item	Description
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.

Phone

Item	Description
View Devices	Manage your devices.
Add device	Add a device.
Connect	Connect a device.
Disconnect	Disconnect a device.
Device information	View information about your device.
Make favourite	Select a preferred device.
Delete	Delete a device.
Manage contacts	Manage your phonebook and contacts.
Automatic contact download	Switch automatic phonebook download on.
Sort by:	Set your contacts to display alphabetically by forename or by surname.
Re-download contacts	Manually download your phonebook.
Delete contacts	Delete your phonebook from the system.
Phone Ringtone selection	Manage device tones.
No ringtone	Mute the ring tone of your cell phone.
Use phone ringtone	View and select the ring tone for incoming calls. You can select the ring tone on your phone or one of the system ring tones.
Text messaging	Switch text messaging on and off.
No tone (silence)	Switch text message notification tones on and off.
Voice read out	Switch text message voice notification on and off.
Roaming warning	Switch roaming notification on and off.
Low battery notification	Switch low battery notification on and off.

Emergency Assistance

Item	Description
Emergency Assistance	Switch Emergency Assistance on and off.
Set emergency contacts	Set emergency contacts from your phonebook.

Radio

Item	Description
Radio text	View information about the current radio broadcast.
Autostore presets (AST)	Refresh the six strongest FM radio stations in your current location to the preset bank where the current radio station is stored.
DAB servicelink	Select to switch on and off.
Alternative frequency	
Regional	
News announcements	

Navigation System (If Equipped)

Map

Item	Description
Map preferences	Adjust your map preferences.
3-D city model	Display three-dimensional buildings on the map.
Breadcrumbs	Display white dots on the map to represent your previous route.
POI icons	Display point of interest icons on the map.
Select POIs	Select which point of interest categories display on the map.

Route Guidance

Item	Description
Route preferences	Adjust your route preferences.
Preferred route	Select the shortest, fastest or most eco friendly route.
Always use ___ route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting.
Automatic find parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.
Eco time penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated eco friendly route. The higher the setting, the longer the system allows for the route.
Dynamic route guidance	Switch whether the system considers traffic information when planning a route on or off.
Navigation preferences	Adjust your navigation preferences.
Guidance prompts	Select voice and tones, only voice or only tones.
Hazard spot warning	Select visual and tones or only visual.

Reliant upon traffic message channel or online traffic.
Not available in all countries.

Apps

Item	Description
Enable Mobile apps	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on the system. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on the system.
Enable Mobile apps via USB	
Update mobile apps	Provides information on the current state of available app updates.
All apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.

Wi-Fi

Item	Description
System Wi-Fi	Adjust your Wi-Fi preferences.
View available networks	Select from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
Wi-Fi availability notification	Select to switch notifications on and off.

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to activate ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.
To switch ambient lighting conditions: off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

Vehicle Settings (If Equipped)

Camera

Item	Description
Camera settings	Adjust the rear camera preferences.
Rear camera delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider. When this option is on, the rear view camera display is shown for a short time after you shift the vehicle into drive.
Active Park Assist	Allows you to switch the park aid feature on and off from the rear view camera screen.
Enhanced Park Pilot	Displays a visual indication when the reverse sensing system detects an object.

Voice Control Recognition

Menu Item	Action and Description
Advanced mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contacts name with you before making a call.
Voice command list	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

Valet Mode (If Equipped)

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Note: *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, contact an authorized dealer.*

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING (G1823162) edited

Voice command Recognition

issues- Symptom	Issue- Possible cause-Possible solution- Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand what I am saying.	- You may be using the wrong voice commands. Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands. Use the voice commands: These commands give you an overview of the available commands. You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time. Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command. The system does not understand the name of a song or artist. You may be using the wrong voice commands. Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section. You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain". Make sure you are saying the using the wrong voice commands. • See Using Voice Recognition (page 322). • For a complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles". Helpful Hint: You can select the media manually. Press MEDIA. Select the artwork or info button and select "what's playing". list of voice commands, refer to the regional Ford website. - You are speaking too soon. • Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	- Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. • Connect your device to a USB port. • If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N". an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks. - You are using the wrong voice commands. • See Using Voice Recognition (page 322). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the regional Ford website.

issues- Symptom	Issue Possible cause Possible solution Cause and Resolution
	- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system. - The system does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call. You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook. Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom". The contact name may contain special characters. Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +. The system's voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone. You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook. The system applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone. Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press PHONE. Select the option contains special characters, for contacts and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. The system reads the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting. The system's voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive. You may be saying the foreign names using the currently

issues- Symptom	Issue- Possible causePossible solution- Cause and Resolution
	selected language for the system. The system applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always example *, - or +. ▪ Rename the files on your device or use the English pronunciation for these artists. The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language. The system uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology. The system uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice. The system offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "Call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "Play Artist Madonna"). General Issue Possible cause Possible solution The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the system's language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice

issues- Symptom	Issue- Possible cause- Possible solution- Cause and Resolution
	control and voice prompts). The system does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display. The system only supports four languages- touchscreen to select and play the track.
The system does not understand the name of a contact in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, the system remains in the current active language. The system offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "Call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "Play Artist Madonna"). SYNC 3 System Reset The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a feature is lost. This- the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. - The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. • Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies

issues- Symptom	Issue Possible causePossible solution- Cause and Resolution
	phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phone-book on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	- Device limitation. • The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.

USB and Bluetooth Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	- Device malfunction. • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button on the radio bezel. After approximately 5 seconds the- it and try again. - Cable connection issue. • Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port. - Incompatible cable. • Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	- Incorrect device settings. - Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings. - Check that your device is not set only to charge. - Device lock ~~screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the system. For additional assistance with troubleshooting please call or visit the~~ enabled. - Unlock your device before connecting it.
The system does not recognize my device.	- Device limitation. - Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	- Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. - Connect your device to a USB port. - If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.	- Incompatible device. - Check the compatibility of your device on the regional ~~Ford Website~~ website. - Device not connected. - Pair your device. See Phone (page 350). - Media player not running. - Start the media player on your device.
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	- Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. - Repair the files on your device. - Corrupt files. - Repair the files on your device. - Copyright protected files. - Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected.

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	– Unsupported file format. ▪ Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See Entertainment (page 345). – Device indexing required. ▪ Re-index your device. See Settings (page 366). – Device lock screen enabled. ▪ Unlock your device before connecting it.
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	– Device malfunction. ▪ Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	– Device limitation. ▪ Turn the volume down on your device
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help: – If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory. – If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.

Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	- Incorrect cell phone settings. - Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	- Cell phone malfunction. - Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. - Cell phone microphone muted. - Unmute your cell phone microphone.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	- System restart required. - Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.
I cannot download phone-book.	- Incompatible cell phone. - Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the regional Ford website. - Incorrect cell phone settings. - Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. - Incorrect system settings. - Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 366). - Cell phone malfunction. - Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.
A message displays suggesting that my phone-book has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	- Incorrect cell phone settings. - Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. - Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory. - Incorrect system settings. - Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 366).

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my cell phone.	– Incompatible cell phone. ▪ Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the regional Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. ▪ Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. ▪ Install the latest cell phone firmware. ▪ Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again. ▪ Switch automatic phonebook download off. See Settings (page 366).
Text messaging does not work.	– Incompatible cell phone. ▪ Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the regional Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. ▪ Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.
I cannot hear text messages.	– Incompatible cell phone. ▪ Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the regional Ford website.

Navigation (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	– Incorrect entry method. ▪ Enter the street name without the country.
The system does not recognize coordinates.	– You are using the wrong coordinates format. ▪ Use the format is ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.

| Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	– Incompatible device. • You will need an Android device with OS 2.3 or higher or an iOS 3GS device with iOS 5.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your iOS device to a USB port to find AppLink compatible apps.
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device. • Download and install the latest version of the app. – AppLink compatible apps not running on your device. • Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required. – Incorrect app settings. • Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	– Apps failed to fully close. • Close restart the apps and try again. • If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device. • If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. • Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– Cable connection issue. ▪ Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	– Device volume is low. ▪ Turn the volume up on your device.
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them. ▪ Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.

Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	– Password error. • Enter the correct network password. – Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. • Use a unique name for your SSID,. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	– Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	– Obstructed network signal. • If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	– Hidden network. • Make the network visible and try again.

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see SYNC when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	- System limitation. - SYNC does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
Software downloads take too long.	- Weak network signal - Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. - Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. - Use an more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	- No software update available. - Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. - Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.

Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

Note: *You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.*

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the regional Ford website.

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY (G1871100)

WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

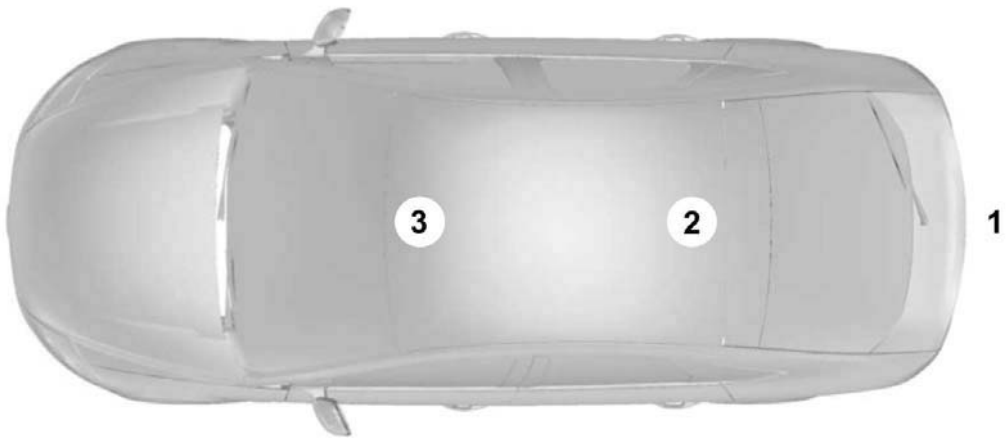


Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Car

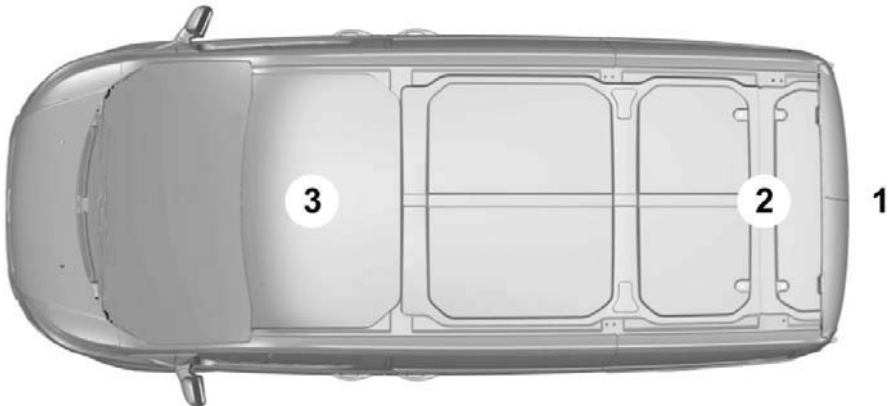
Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation (UNECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements.

Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following table. We do not provide special provisions or conditions for installations or use.



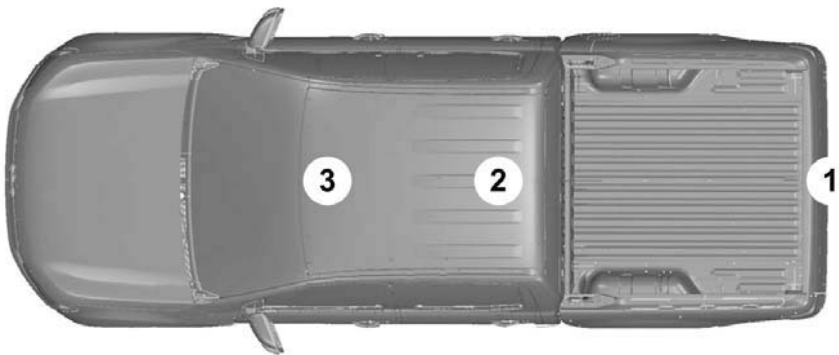
E239120

Van



E239122

Truck



E239121

390 (G1871100)

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Note: After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (G1755143) edited

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:**

You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.
- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages:

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY.SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU.THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE.TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE.Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws.Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan.You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested.You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent.After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court.You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration.You are giving up the

right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- i. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2.Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3.Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices

or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4.Disclaimer

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5.Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR

FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6.Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606 This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided. © 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I.US/Canada Territory

A.United States Data.The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX.Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®.The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B.Canada Data.The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1.Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a.Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis.The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b.Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2.Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada.All rights reserved.”

3.End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”).Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis.The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such

data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A.Third Party Notices.Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”.The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement.If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement,HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B.Jordan Data.Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers.In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer.For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V.Europe Territory

A.Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1.General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes.Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes.For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2.Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium.Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l’Equipement et des Transports.”

B.Paper Maps.With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client’s entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client’s paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client’s complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client’s obtaining prior

written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C.OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D.Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria "© Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen"

Croatia	
Cyprus,	
Estonia,	
Latvia,	
Lithuania,	
Moldova,	
Poland,	
Slovenia	
and/or	
Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: lgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"

Sweden "Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."

Switzerland "Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE

SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only

as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracernote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING



Changes or modifications not ~~expressly~~ expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intellematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “Suppliers”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

FordPass Connect Terms and Conditions Your Ford vehicle is equipped with an embedded modem ("Device") which transmits data and allows access to our service of vehicle connectivity ("Service"); certain of which is provided through FordPass, a smartphone-compatible application ("App"). Service is available for use with your Device produced/provided by us ("Ford"). Your use of the Device and access to and use of the Service is subject to these Terms and Conditions and all policies and guidelines referred to herein, hereafter collectively these "Terms and Conditions". 1: Acceptance of Terms and Conditions Your use of the Device and the Service is conditional upon your acceptance of these Terms and Conditions. By signing on these Terms and Conditions, you agree to accept these Terms and Conditions. By accepting these Terms and Conditions you represent that you are at least 18 years old and that you agree to comply with these Terms and Conditions. 2: Device and Service Ford has the discretion to decide on the content and features of Service. Your use of Service is subject to, in addition to these Terms and Conditions, the terms and conditions for the use of the FordPass App ("APP T&C"). In case of any discrepancy between these Terms and Conditions and App terms and conditions, the App terms

and conditions shall prevail. [If you do not agree to the App T&C, you must immediately stop using Service.] 3: Service Registration A third-party service provider ("Telecom Service Provider") provides telecom infrastructure for Service. As required by applicable laws, the Telecom Service Provider will request you to, and you must, as requested, register your real name with the Telecom Service Provider for the use of the SIM card pre-equipped in Device, and provide personal information as required by the Telecom Service Provider, including but not limited to: Chinese Identity Certificate Number, or such other identification number as the telecom service provide may require; Scanned copy of your identification certificate; Photo of you holding your identification certificate; and Such other personal information as may be required. You shall provide real and correct information. If you have another person to provide his/her information as aforesaid you shall ensure he/she is at least 18 years old and his/her information provided shall be real and correct. The Telecom Service Provider may cease to provide telecom infrastructure support and you may not be able to have access to the Service if you fail to provide information as aforesaid. You are solely responsible for the use of Device and/or Service whether the aforesaid information is provided by yourself or another person. 4: Complimentary Service Period You will receive up to [three (3) years] of complimentary Service free of charge from the invoice date of your vehicle equipped with the Device ("Commencement Date") ("Complimentary Period"). For continued use of Service after the Complimentary Period, you will need to pay a subscription fee as to be notified by us. You may stop using Service if you do not agree to pay the subscription fee then. 5: Possible Extra Charges The Service is based on service and support provided by certain third party

suppliers, including without limitation the data transmission service provided by the Telecom Service Provider. You may be charged by such third-party suppliers. In particular, if you use the Wifi hotspot afforded by Device to transmit data, the Telecom Service Provider may charge you on their rates. You are advised to consult the Telecom Service Provider on its package charging rates.

6. Information Collection and Privacy Without prejudice to the APP T&C (where applicable to the use of Service), when you use the Service, certain information will be collected by us from the Device and APP as required by laws and regulations and in order to provide you with the Service. You agree for us to collect the following information ("Collected Information"): Certain information of status and operation of new energy vehicles, if applicable; (e.g. information of battery, gear lever position, motor status, vehicle warning status, vehicle charging status, temperature of key parts, etc.) as required by applicable laws; Your personal information (e.g. your name; ID card number, cell phone number, etc.; "Personal Information"); diagnostic data (e.g. tire pressure, fuel level, oil life; hardware and software version; mileage; etc. of your vehicle); driving track record (e.g. location, direction and path, status of seat belt, accelerator/brake pedal position; etc.) and network connection data (e.g. network attachment, data traffic, IP address and etc.).

How We Use Collected Information: We use your personal information to provide you with great functionality and services, allow you to control certain vehicle features, fulfill requests you've made in FordPass, personalize your experience, troubleshoot problems, develop new and improved products, services, and marketing strategies and research, to protect safety, property, privacy, and security, or to comply with legal requirements. WE MAY SEND COMMUNICATIONS ABOUT DEVICE,

SERVICES, OFFERS OF PACKAGE CHARGING RATES, PROMOTIONS, NEWS, AND MORE THAT ARE CUSTOMIZED BASED ON YOUR PERSONAL INFORMATION, INCLUDING YOUR LOCATION, SPEED, AND DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS. You may choose not to provide certain Personal Information (such as not entering a Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) to connect to your vehicle), but this may limit or prevent use of certain features.

How We Share Information: We may use and share non-personal information for any purpose. We do not provide your Personal Information to anyone for independent use, without providing you a choice, except authorized dealers and our affiliates. We also share your Personal Information with trusted service providers, under agreements that limit how they may use your personal information and require adequate safeguards. Our affiliates mean the group of companies related by common control or ownership. We may provide your Personal Information to external companies under contract with us to enable delivery of the services and where they are subject to confidentiality and security obligations. We may share your Personal Information without notice to you where we believe that doing so is reasonably necessary to: comply with a legal requirement or enforceable governmental request; protect and defend the rights or property of us and our affiliates; act under exigent circumstances to protect the personal safety of us or affiliate personnel, users of our vehicles; websites or apps, or the public; and detect, prevent, or otherwise address fraud, security, safety, or privacy issues.

Your Consent: By accepting these Terms and Conditions, you expressly agree to the collection, logging, storage, and sharing of the information as collected as aforesaid for the purposes set forth above. Further, you agree to obtain the consent to the

collection, logging, storage, use and sharing of the information as collected as aforesaid from any of your Authorized Users of your vehicle and/or Device for the purposes set forth above. You understand and consent to the collection, use, processing, transfer, and disclosure of your Personal Information globally (including to the United States), to the extent in compliance with the preceding paragraphs of this section and applicable laws. To the fullest extent allowed by applicable law, such information may be transferred across country borders, and used, processed, and disclosed in global locations that may have different levels of privacy protection than in your own country. If you do not consent or do not wish to disclose this information, do not use Device and Service. How to Contact Us, Access, or Control the Use of Your Information: For more information or to request correction or removal of personal information, contact us as set forth in the Contact Us section below. Security and Retention of Your Information: We use systems, policies, procedures, and technology to provide reasonable security to protect and maintain the security and accuracy of your information. We will only retain your Personal Information for so long as reasonably necessary to fulfill legitimate business purposes. Privacy Policy Effective Date and Revisions: This Privacy Policy may be updated in order to reflect any changes to Device, App and/or Services or privacy practices. 7. Modification of These Terms and Conditions: Ford may at their sole discretion, with or without notice, modify these Terms and Conditions at any time and such modifications will be effective immediately upon being posted on the App or at www.Ford.com.cn or otherwise notified to you. Your continued use of Device or Service will indicate your acceptance of these modified Terms and Conditions. If you do not agree to the

Terms and Conditions or any modification of the Terms and Conditions, you must immediately stop using Device and Service. 8. Authorized Users and Purchaser: You may allow others who are above 18 years old (including without limitation passengers and other drivers of your vehicle, each an "Authorized User") to use your Device and/or Service provided through your Device or APP user account registered in connection with your vehicle and/or Device, provided that you are responsible for the use of Device and/or Service by your Authorized Users, and for informing your Authorized Users of these Terms and Conditions and causing each Authorized Users to agree to these Terms and Conditions. If you resell the vehicle to another party ("Purchaser"), you are responsible for informing the Purchaser of these Terms and Conditions. Upon your resale of your vehicle to a Purchaser, you must immediately de-register the user name of the SIM card embedded in Device and [Master Reset the Service] and inform the Purchaser to register his/her personal information to reactivate the SIM card in the Device. If you fail to follow the preceding, you may be held liable under applicable laws and/or the Telecom Service Provider may cease to provide telecommunication service to support Service to you. 9. Disclaimer: Service may be interrupted due to a variety of reasons which are out of our control and is based on certain services provided by third-party suppliers which is out of our control. We are not responsible for any interruptions of Service. We may modify, suspend, or discontinue Service or any feature at any time without notice. Device and Service accessible through it are provided for information purposes only on an "as-is" and "as-available" basis. We make no warranties or guarantees

availability of Service without interruption or error. 10. Contact Us: If you have any questions, comments, or claims regarding Device or Service, you may contact your authorized dealer or contact us at: Changan Ford: 400-8877766

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (G1941190) edited

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to European directive 2014/53/EU.

Our suppliers have declared that their components conform with European directive 2014/53/EU. For the full text of their declaration, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

A

A/C

See: Climate Control.....101

About This Manual (G1467680).....9

ABS

See: Brakes.....152

ABS driving hints

See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes
(G1448584).....152

Accessories

See: Replacement Parts Recommendation
(G1523642).....12

ACC

See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control
(G1868799).....176

Active Park Assist (G1867959).....164

Using Active Park Assist.....165

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

(G1448428).....59

Air Conditioning

See: Climate Control.....101

Air Vents (G1867596).....101

Center Air Vents.....101

Side Air Vents.....101

Alarm

See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral
Battery (G1728931).....55

See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:
Perimeter Alarm (G1725570).....56

AM/FM Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC

3 (G1907904).....300

Selecting a Radio Source.....300

Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:

Integral Battery (G1728931).....55

Arming the Alarm.....56

Battery Back-up Sounder.....55

Disarming the Alarm.....56

Full and Reduced Guard.....56

Inclination Sensors.....55

Interior Sensors.....55

Perimeter Alarm.....55

Triggering the Alarm.....55

Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With:

Perimeter Alarm (G1725570).....56

Arming the Alarm.....57

Disarming the Alarm.....57

Appendices.....389

Apps (G1823160).....364

Using Apps on an Android Device.....366

Using Apps on an iOS Device.....366

At a Glance.....14

Audible Warnings and Indicators

(G1867940).....81

Airbag Secondary Warning.....81

Automatic Transmission.....81

Auto-Start-Stop Warning.....81

Door Ajar.....81

Exterior Lamps On.....81

Key Outside Vehicle.....81

Low Fuel Reminder.....81

Over Speed Warning.....81

Parking Brake On.....81

Seatbelt Reminder.....81

Audio System.....297

Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays -

Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907555).....301

Adjusting the Clock.....301

Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3

(G1964279).....299

Adjusting the VolumeSelecting the

RadioPress the button to select radio
mode.Press the button again to display
the available radio sources.Repeatedly
press the button to scroll through the
available radio sources.....299

Changing Radio Stations.....299

Pausing or Playing Media.....300

Seek Down and Previous Track

Button.....299

Seek Up and Next Track Button.....299

Sound Settings.....300

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....299

Switching the Screen On and OffSystem

Settings.....300

Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

(G1868871).....297

Adjusting the Volume.....297

Changing Radio Stations.....297

Pausing or Playing MediaIn radio mode,

press the button to mute the signal.Press
the button again to restore the
signal.....298

Returning to the Previous Screen.....	298
Scrolling Through the Menu Options.....	298
Seek Down and Previous Track Button.....	298
Seek Up and Next Track Button.....	298
Selecting a Menu Option.....	298
Selecting Media.....	297
Selecting the Radio.....	297
Sound Settings.....	298
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	297
Switching the Screen On and Off.....	298
System Settings.....	298
Using a Cell Phone.....	298
Autolamps (G1921176).....	66
Automatic Climate Control (G1867582).....	103
Adjusting the Auto Mode.....	103
Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents.....	104
Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents.....	104
Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents.....	104
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	104
Setting the Temperature.....	104
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	103
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	103
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	103
Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off.....	103
Switching the Climate Control On and Off.....	103
Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off.....	103
Automatic High Beam Control (G1952622).....	67
About Automatic High Beam Control	67
Automatic High Beam Control Information Messages	68
Automatic High Beam Indicator	68
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control	68
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On or Off	68

A

Automatic Transmission (G1964353).....	148
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning.....	151
Brake-Shift BrakeShift Interlock.....	149
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....	151
Kickdown.....	149
Positions.....	148
SelectShift™.....	148
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check (G1870811).....	236
Auto-Start-Stop (G1948552).....	127
Information Messages	129
Principle of Operation	127
Replacing the Battery	129
Switching the System On and Off	128
Using Auto-Start-Stop	128
Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission (G1948553).....	126
Auto-Start-Stop Warning	127
Information Messages	127
Principle of Operation	126
Replacing the Battery	127
Switching the System On and Off	126
Using Auto-Start-Stop	126

A

Autowipers (G1874571).....	61
Settings	62
Auxiliary Power Points12 Volt DC Power Point (G1944778).....	115
Auxiliary Power Points.....	115

B

Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery (G1667059).....	237
Blind Spot Information System (G1745160).....	186
Switching the System Off and On.....	188
System Errors.....	188

Using the Blind Spot Information System.....	187
BLIS	
See: Blind Spot Information System	
(G1745160).....	186
Body Styling Kits (G1840759).....	251
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood	
(G1867970).....	224
Bounce-Back (G1882073).....	75
Brake Fluid Check (G1717969).....	236
Brakes.....	152
General Information (G1526280).....	152
Breaking-In (G1477791).....	208
Brakes and Clutch.....	208
Engine.....	208
Tires.....	208
Bulb Specification Chart (G1867995).....	291

C

Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L	
EcoBoost™ (G1868000).....	285
Capacities.....	285
Specifications.....	285
Capacities and Specifications - 1.1L	
Duratec (G1868001).....	286
Brake System	288
Engine	286
Fuel Tank	287
Washer Reservoir	287
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L	
Duratorq-TDCi Diesel (G1868003).....	288
Capacities.....	289
Engine Oil.....	288
Specifications.....	289
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L	
EcoBoost™ (G1868002).....	289
Brake System.....	291
Engine.....	290
Fuel Tank.....	290
Washer Reservoir.....	291
Capacities and Specifications.....	281
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior (G1477841).....	248

Catalytic Converter (G1876874).....	139
On-Board Diagnostics System.....	139
Changing a Bulb (G1867986).....	242
Front Fog Lamp.....	244
Headlamp.....	242
License Plate Lamp.....	246
possible. Central High Mounted Stop Lamp.....	246
Rear Fog Lamp.....	246
Rear Lamp.....	245
Side Repeater Use Direction Indicator.....	245
Changing a Fuse (G1923462).....	222
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	222
Fuses Types.....	223
General Information.....	222
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	222
Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With:	
Spare Wheel (G1883131).....	264
Installing a Road Wheel.....	269
Jacking and Lifting Points.....	266
Lug Nuts.....	264
Removing a Road Wheel.....	268
Removing the Wheel Trim.....	268
Vehicle Jack.....	266
Vehicles With a Spare Wheel.....	264
Changing the 12V Battery (G1667059).....	237
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	238
Changing the Front Wiper Blades	
(G1857142).....	239
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades	
(G1874721).....	239

Checking MyKey System Status	
(G1952239).....	46

C

Checking the Wiper Blades (G1448670).....	239
Child Restraint Positioning (G1884836).....	22
Child Safety.....	18
Child Safety Locks (G1869658).....	28
Left-Hand Side.....	28
Right-Hand Side.....	28
Cigar Lighter (G1477648).....	116
Cleaning Leather Seats (G1821407).....	250

Cleaning the Exterior (G1477841).....	248
Body Paintwork Preservation.....	249
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	248
Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....	248
Cleaning the Headlamps.....	248
Cleaning the Rear Window.....	248
Cleaning the Interior (G1477842).....	249
Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats.....	249
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens.....	250
Leather Interior.....	250
Rear Windows.....	250
Seatbelts.....	249
Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays.....	250
Suede Micro Fiber Fabric.....	250
Cleaning the Wheels (G1546526).....	251

Clearing All MyKeys (G1952238).....	46
MyKey Information Messages	46

C	
Climate Control.....	101
Clutch Fluid Check (G1717970).....	237
Cold Weather Precautions (G1477792).....	209
Compact Disc Player - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1868873).....	302
Playing a CD.....	302
Connecting a Bluetooth Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907905).....	301
Pairing a Device.....	301
Coolant Check See: Engine Coolant Check (G1477815).....	235
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start (G1930082).....	44
MyKey Information Messages	44
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start (G1952236).....	43
MyKey Information Messages	43

C	
Cross Traffic Alert (G1768802).....	188
Blocked Sensors.....	190
Switching the System Off and On.....	190
System Errors.....	190
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts.....	190
System Limitations.....	190
Using the Cross Traffic Alert System.....	188
Cruise Control.....	175
Principle of Operation (G1448594).....	175
Cruise control See: Using Cruise Control (G1868749).....	175
Cup Holders (G1477702).....	117

D	
Data Recording (G1590702).....	11

Declaration of Conformity (G1941190).....	420
---	-----

D	
Device Holder (G1868739).....	117
Installing a Device.....	117
Installing the Device Holder.....	117
Removing a Device.....	117
Removing the Device Holder.....	117
Diesel Particulate Filter (G1876876).....	141
Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration.....	142
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration.....	143
On-Board Diagnostics System.....	141
Digital Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1868872).....	301
Selecting a Radio Source.....	301
Direction Indicators (G1875446).....	69
Door Edge Protection.....	58
Principle of Operation (G1694492).....	58
Doors and Locks.....	49
Drive Control (G1960037).....	198
Selectable Drive Modes	198

D

Driver Airbag (G1869721).....	32
Driver Alert (G1886863).....	182
Resetting the System.....	184
System Display.....	183
System Warnings.....	183
Driving Aids.....	182
Driving Hints.....	208
Driving Through Water (G1661881).....	209

Eco Mode (G1592525).....	192
Eco Mode System Display	192
Principle of Operation	192

E

Economical Driving (G1598582).....	208
EcoSelect (G1906297).....	129
EcoSelect AboutEcoSelect.....	129
EcoSelect Indicator	129
Switching EcoSelect On and Off	129
Electromagnetic Compatibility	
(G1871100).....	389
Emergency Assistance (G1907968).....	303
End User License Agreement (G1755143).....	391
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE	
AGREEMENT (EULA).....	391
Engine Block Heater (G1752502).....	124
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	125
Engine Coolant Check (G1477815).....	235
Adding Coolant.....	235
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel (G1830389).....	235
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline	
(G1830390).....	235
Engine Emission Control.....	139
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System (G1611956).....	55
Engine Oil Check (G1562149).....	233
Adding Engine Oil.....	233
Engine Oil Dipstick - Diesel (G1588994).....	233
Engine Oil Dipstick - Gasoline	
(G1688369).....	232
Engine Overspeed (G1972108).....	210

E

Entertainment (G1824131).....	345
Playing Music From a USB device.	
Supportedor Media	
Players,Player.....	349
Streaming Music From a Bluetooth	
Device.....	349
Thisshows you Using thestations that you	
have saved as presets. You can access	
these options using the touchscreen or	
voice commands. The available options	
may change depending on the source	
that you select. These options may	
include: Message and description A	
popup appears, allowing you to type in	
the frequency of a station. Allows you to	
switch Traffic Announcements on and	
off. Stations A list of all available radio	
stations appears. You can select a	
station by pressing any list entry on the	
touchscreen. For more entries, you can	
scroll down using the up and down	
arrows, the slider or by swiping down the	
list. Sources Press this button to select	
the source of media you want to listen	
to. AM/FM/DAB Radio.....	346
Using the CD Player.....	348
Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording (G1590702).....	11
Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Blind	
Spot Information System/Power Fold	
Exterior Mirrors (G1867602).....	72
Folding the Mirrors.....	73
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	72
Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power	
Adjustable Exterior Mirrors (G1867603).....	73
Folding the Mirrors.....	73
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	73

F

Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel (G1830389).....	235
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline	
(G1830390).....	235

Fastening the Seatbelts (G1754073).....	29
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	29
First Aid Kit (G14477796).....	211
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel (G1883131).....	264
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit (G1640978).....	252
Floor Mats (G1448653).....	209
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps (G1868417).....	68
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps (G1868418).....	69
Front Fog Lamps (G1868417).....	68
Front Parking Aid (G1973544).....	160
Front Parking Aid Information Messages	162
Object Distance Indicator.....	161
Front Wiper Blades	
See: Changing the Front Wiper Blades (G1857142).....	239
Fuel and Refueling.....	130
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™ (G1948539).....	293
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.1L Duratec (G1948540).....	294
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel (G1948541).....	295
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™ (G1948542).....	296

F

Fuel Consumption (G1944721).....	137
Advertised Capacity	137
Fuel Economy.....	137
Fuel Filler Funnel Location (G1728199).....	131
Fuel Quality - Diesel (G1477716).....	131
Long-Term Storage.....	131
Fuel Quality - Gasoline (G1477715).....	130
Long-Term Storage.....	131

Fuel Shutoff (G1448655).....	211
Fuse Box Locations (G1936886).....	215
Engine Compartment Fuse Box	215
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box	215

F

Fuses.....	215
Fuse Specification Chart (G1893599).....	215
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	215
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	220
Gasoline Particulate Filter (G1970494).....	139
Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages	140
Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration	140

G

Gauges (G1867938).....	76
Automatic Transmission Gearshift Lever Position Indicator.....	77
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	77
Fuel Gauge.....	77
Information Display.....	76
Odometer.....	76
Speedometer.....	77
Tachometer.....	76
Trip Computer.....	77
Vehicle and System SettingsUse the information display controls on the steering wheel to adjust various system settings.....	77
Gearbox	
See: Transmission.....	147
General Information on Radio Frequencies (G1477600).....	36
Global Opening and Closing (G1907822).....	72
Global Closing.....	72
Global Opening.....	72

H

Handbrake

See: Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission
(G1448585).....153

See: Parking Brake - Manual Transmission
(G1521671).....152

Hazard Flashers (G1477795).....211

Hazard Flashers Warning Lamp.....211

Switching the Hazard Flashers On or
Off.....211

Headlamp Exit Delay (G1448496).....67

Headlamp Leveling (G1547833).....69

Headlamp Removal

See: Removing a Headlamp (G1867984).....240

Headrest

See: Head Restraints (G1910909).....108

Head Restraints (G1910909).....108

Adjusting the Head Restraints.....108

Removing the Head Restraints.....109

Heated Exterior Mirrors (G1866813).....107

Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With:

Electronic Automatic Temperature
Control (EATC) (G1878082).....107

Heated Rear Window - Vehicles With:

Electronic Manual Temperature
Control (EMTC) (G1866812).....107

Heated Seats (G1936573).....114

H

Heated Steering Wheel (G1769260).....59

Heated Windshield (G1688416).....107

Heating

See: Climate Control.....101

Hill Start Assist (G1644165).....153

Switching the System On and Off.....154

Using Hill Start Assist.....154

Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate

- Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic
Temperature Control (EATC)

(G1885442).....104

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold

Weather.....105

General Hints.....104

Maximum Cooling

Using Defogging or Clearing the
Instrument Panel and

Footwell Windshield of Thin Ice.....105

Quickly Cooling the Interior.....105

Recommended Settings for Cooling.....105

Recommended Settings for Heating.....105

Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate
- Vehicles With: Electronic Manual
Temperature Control (EMTC)

(G1885443).....106

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold

Weather.....106

General Hints.....106

Maximum Cooling

Using Defogging or Clearing the
Instrument Panel and

Footwell Windshield of Thin Ice.....106

Quickly Cooling the Interior.....106

Quickly Heating the Interior.....106

Recommended Settings for Cooling.....106

Recommended Settings for Heating.....106

Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes

(G1448584).....152

Home Screen Item Tile Home screen

display (G1824129).....320

Hood Lock

See: Opening and Closing the Hood

(G1867970).....224

I

Ignition Switch (G1518436).....118

Starting the Engine.....119

Switching the Ignition Off.....118

Switching the Ignition Onto Accessory

Mode.....118

Switching the Ignition to Accessory

Mode On.....118

Information Displays.....82

General Information (G1867945).....82

Information Messages (G1867946).....89

Installing Child Restraints (G1884835).....18

Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support

Leg.....21

Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers.....	21
Booster Seats.....	19
Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups.....	19
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	20
Top Tether Anchor Points.....	21
Instrument Cluster.....	76
Instrument Lighting Dimmer (G1911490).....	67
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD (G1866792).....	14
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD (G1866793).....	15
Interior Lamps (G1910715).....	70
Courtesy Lamp.....	70
Reading Lamps.....	70
Rear Courtesy Lamp.....	70
Interior Mirror (G1587232).....	73
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	74
Introduction.....	9

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle (G1965077).....	212
To Connect the Booster Cables.....	212
To Start the Engine.....	213

K

Keyless Entry (G1869730).....	51
Deactivated Passive Keys.....	53
Locking the Doors.....	52
Locking the Liftgate.....	53
OpeningUnlocking the Liftgate.....	53
Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys.....	53
The system allows you to unlock, operate and lock your vehicle without using a key or remote control. The system requires a valid passive key to be within one Principle of Operation.....	51
Unlocking the Driver Door.....	53
UnlockingYour Vehicle Touch the unlock sensorDoors.....	52
Keys and Remote Controls.....	36

L

Lane Keeping System (G1886864).....	184
Switching the System On and Off.....	185
System Display.....	186
System Settings.....	185
Liftgate.....	54
Lighting Control (G1884669).....	65
High Beam Headlamps.....	66
Parking Lamps.....	65
Lighting.....	65
General Information (G1584682).....	65
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel (G1868565).....	200
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles Without: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel (G1868888).....	200
Load Carrying.....	199
General Information (G1477738).....	199
Locking and Unlocking (G1869729).....	49
Door Lock Indicator.....	49
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	49
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside.....	50
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade.....	51
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	50
Power Door Locks.....	49
Remote Control.....	49
Luggage Covers (G1911342).....	199
Removing the Cover.....	199
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel (G1883131).....	264
Lug Nuts (G1868862).....	280
AllLocking Lug Nuts.....	280
Lug Nut Wheel TypeTorque.....	280

M

Maintenance.....	224
General Information (G1477802).....	224

Manual Climate Control (G1867581).....	101
AdjustingSetting the Blower Motor	
Speed.....	102
Directing Air to the Footwell Air	
Vents.....	102
Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air	
Vents.....	102
Directing Air to the Windshield Air	
Vents.....	102
Setting the Temperature.....	102
Switching Maximum Cooling On and	
Off.....	102
Switching Maximum Defrost On and	
Off.....	101
Switching the Air Conditioning On and	
Off.....	101
Switching the Climate Control On and	
Off.....	101
Switching the Recirculated Air On and	
Off.....	101
Manual Liftgate (G1869733).....	54
Closing the Liftgate.....	54
Opening the Liftgate Using the Exterior	
Release Button.....	54
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote	
Control.....	54
Manual Seats - 3-Door (G1909185).....	109
Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat.....	111
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	111
Folding the Seat Backrest Forward.....	110
Moving the Seat Backward and	
Forward.....	109
Recline Adjustment.....	112
Returning the Seat Backrest to the Seating	
Position.....	111
Manual Seats - 5-Door (G1909186).....	112
Adjusting the Height of the Driver	
Seat.....	113
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	112
Moving the Seat Backward and	
Forward.....	112
Recline Adjustment.....	113
Manual Transmission - 5-Speed Manual	
Transmission (G1939965).....	147
General Information	147
Shifting Into Reverse Gear	147

M

Manual Transmission - 6-Speed Manual	
Transmission (G1950186).....	147
Authoring	
TemplateGeneralInformation.....	147
Shifting Into Reverse Gear.....	147
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	82
Mirrors	
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	71
Mobile Communications Equipment	
(G1448348).....	12
Moonroof.....	75

MyKey Settings - Excluding: ST

(G1930081).....	41
Configurable Settings	41
Non-Configurable Settings	41
MyKey Settings - ST (G1965931).....	42
Configurable Settings	42
Non-Configurable Settings	42
MyKey Troubleshooting - Vehicles With:	
Push Button Start (G1930087).....	47
What is an admin key?	47
Why can I not clear the MyKeys?	47
Why can I not create a MyKey?	47
Why can I not program a MyKey?	47
Why can I not start the engine with a	
MyKey?	48
Why does the MyKey distance not	
accumulate?	48
MyKey Troubleshooting - Vehicles	
Without: Push Button Start (G1952240).....	47
What is an admin key?	47
Why can I not clear the MyKeys?	47
Why can I not create a MyKey?	47
Why can I not program a MyKey?	47
Why does the MyKey distance not	
accumulate?	47

M

MyKey™	41
Principle of Operation (G1930080).....	41

N

Navigation (G1823159).....	354
Changing the Format of the Map.....	360
Michelin Travel Guide.....	362
Navigation Map UpdatesAnnual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.....	363
Route Guidance.....	361
setSetting a destination, press:Destination.....	356
Zoom.....	360

Oil Change Indicator Reset (G1951144).....	234
--	-----

O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check (G1562149).....	233
Opening and Closing the Hood	
(G1867970).....	224
Closing the Hood.....	225
Opening the Hood.....	224
Opening and Closing the Moonroof	
(G1882071).....	75
Closing the Moonroof.....	75
Opening the Moonroof.....	75
Opening and Closing the Sun Shades	
(G1882074).....	75

P

Parking Aids.....	158
Principle of Operation (G1477731).....	158
Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission	
(G1448585).....	153
Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	
(G1521671).....	152
Passenger Airbag (G1869722).....	33
Passive Anti-Theft System (G1611956).....	55
Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....	55
Coded Keys.....	55
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....	55
Principle of Operation.....	55
Passive Key Backup Position (G1867411).....	40

PATS

See: Passive Anti-Theft System (G1611956).....55

Personalized SettingsYou can personalize the settings using the information display. (G1911040).....	87
ChimesYou can switch some chimes off.Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.....	89
Distance You can change the distance unit to display imperial or metric units, for example miles or kilometers. Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.Measure Unit.....	88
LanguageYou can choose an alternative language.Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.....	87
Temperature UnitYou can change the temperature unit to display Celsius or Fahrenheit.Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.....	88
Tire Pressure UnitYou can change the tire pressure unit to display psi, kPa or bar.Navigate to the following main menu item and then press the menu button.....	89
Phone (G1823158).....	350
Android Auto.....	353
Apple CarPlay.....	353
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....	350
Text Messaging.....	352
Using Your Cell Phone.....	352
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907907).....	302
Selecting the USB Device.....	303
Track and Folder FormatSupportedAudioFileFormats.....	302
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking (G1869729).....	49
Power Windows (G1867865).....	71
Bounce-Back.....	71
One-Touch Close.....	71
One-Touch Open.....	71

Rear Window Lock.....	71
Pre-Collision Assist (G1973410).....	193
Distance Alert	195
Distance Indication	195
Pre-Collision Assist Information Messages	197
Pre-Collision Assist System Sensors	196
Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp	197
Programming a MyKey (G1952237).....	45
P	
Puncture	
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel (G1883131).....	264
Push Button Ignition Switch (G1869760).....	119
Failure to Start.....	119
Fast Restart.....	120
Key Outside Vehicle Audible Warning.....	121
Starting System Information Messages.....	121
Starting Your VehicleTheEngine.....	119
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	120
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	120
Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode.....	119
R	
Rear Fog LampsSwitching Rear Fog Lamps On and Off (G1868418).....	69
Rear Lamp Removal	
See: Removing a Rear Lamp (G1867985).....	240
Rear Parking Aid (G1973543).....	158
Object Distance Indicator.....	159
Rear Parking Aid Information Messages	160
Rear Seats (G1909499).....	113
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	113
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	114
Rear Under Floor Storage (G1908327).....	199
Adjustable Load Floor.....	199
Rear View Camera (G1867960).....	172
Enhanced Parking Aids or Park Pilot.....	174
Using the Rear View Camera.....	172
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera (G1867960).....	172
Rear Window Wiper and Washers (G1874573).....	64
Rear Window Washer.....	64
Rear Window Wiper.....	64
Rear Wiper Blades	
See: Changing the Rear Wiper Blades (G1874721).....	239
Refueling (G1809497).....	134
Refueling Your Vehicle	135
System Warnings	
RefuelingSystemWarning.....	136
When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes. The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury. Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling. Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire. Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing. Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank. Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others. Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.	RefuelingSystemOverview.....134

Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry (G1867409).....	36
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	37
Locating Your Vehicle.....	38
Passive Key.....	36
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key (G1883603).....	38
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	38
Locating Your Vehicle.....	39
Remote Flip Key.....	38
Removing a Headlamp (G1867984).....	240
Removing and Installing the Engine Undershield (G1870813).....	233
Removing a Rear Lamp (G1867985).....	240
Brake Lamp, Rear Lamp and Direction Indicator.....	240
Reversing Lamp.....	241
Repairing Minor Paint Damage (G1477843).....	251
Replacement Parts Recommendation (G1523642).....	12
Collision Repairs.....	12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	12
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control (G1562151).....	40
Roadside Emergencies.....	211
Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel (G1868565).....	200
Towbar Carriers.....	201
Roof Racks and Load Carriers - Vehicles Without: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel (G1868888).....	200
Towbar Carriers.....	200
Running-In See: Breaking-In (G1477791).....	208
Running Out of Fuel (G1809496).....	131
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	132
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	132
S	
Safety Precautions (G1448576).....	130

Seatbelt Height Adjustment (G1546351).....	29
Seatbelt Reminder (G1952214).....	30
Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning	30
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp	30
Seatbelt Status	30

S	
Seatbelts.....	29
Seats.....	108
Security.....	55
SettingsUnder this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features.To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.SoundSound SettingsReturns sound settings to factory levels.Adjusts the high frequency level.Adjusts the middle frequency level.Adjusts the low frequency level.Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.(If Equipped)Your vehicle might not have all of these features.Media PlayerThis button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source.Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.Menu ItemAction and DescriptionFor some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts.When a podcast is playing, you can choose:For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks.When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:Cover art displays from your device's music files.If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files.This	

overrides any cover art from your device. Switches on an off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist, album. This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database. This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device. Erase the stored in media information in order to re-index. Clock To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM. Menu Item Action and Description Select how time displays. When active, the clock adjusts to time zone changes. This feature is only available in vehicles with navigation. When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time. The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings. Bluetooth Pressing this button allows you to access the following: Menu Item Action You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device. The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. See Pairing a Device in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options. Phone Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode. Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary. To add a phone, select: Menu Item Follow the on-screen instructions. A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle's make on your phone. Select your vehicle's model as it displays on your phone. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful. Your

phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the regional Ford website. Alternatively, to add a phone, select: Menu Item Then select: Follow the on-screen instructions. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website. Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the regional Ford website. Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options. Menu Item Action and Description You can then select: You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table. You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options: Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device. Allows you to see phone and device information. Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device. Removes the selected device from the system. Menu Item Action and Description You can then select: Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date. Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose: Select this option to

re-download your contact list manually. Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone. Menu ItemAction and DescriptionYou can then select: No sound plays when a call comes to your phone. The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting. You can also select one of the three available ringers. Menu ItemAction and DescriptionYou can then select: You can select to switch this option on or off. No sound plays when a message comes to your phone. You can select one of the three available notification sounds. When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message. You can enable and disable the following options as well: Menu ItemAction and DescriptionWhen enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy. When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call. When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low. Emergency AssistanceSelect this button to modify the on or off setting for this feature. If the mobile phone's contacts have been downloaded, you can adjust the following option: Menu ItemAction and DescriptionYou can select up to two numbers from your mobile device's phonebook as emergency contacts for quick access at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process. RadioThis button is available if a Radio source such as AM, FM or DAB is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following

features: Menu ItemAction and DescriptionThis feature is available when FM or DAB Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text. RefreshSelecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source. You can also switch on or off the following: Service linkingAlternative frequencyRegionalNewsNavigationMap PreferencesMenu ItemAction and DescriptionThen select any of the following: When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings. When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots. Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map. Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting: Route PreferencesMenu ItemSecond Level Messages, Actions and DescriptionsThen select any of the following: Choose to have the system display your chosen route type. Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination. Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route. Switch on or off whether the system considers traffic information when planning a route. The system can find a faster route based on heavy traffic flow information or detect a Road Closed incident and find a detour route if possible (if equipped with TMC). Navigation PreferencesMenu ItemAction and DescriptionYou can adjust how the system provides

prompts. Then select any of the following: Voice and Chimes Visual and Chimes Mobile Apps You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device. In order to enable mobile apps, The system requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device. The connected devices sends data to Ford in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, system module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically. All Mobile Apps may not be compatible with the system. Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network. Menu Item Action and Description Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on the system. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on the system. Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options: This provides information on the current state of available app updates. There are three possible states: Update Needed Up-To-Date Updating Mobile Apps... The system detects a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required. No update is required. The system is trying to receive an update. Request Update Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a

Wi-Fi hotspot. Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once. There may also be enabled apps listed under these options. Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group. Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app. (G1823161).....366

Ambient Lighting.....374

Apps.....373

Bluetooth.....370

Clock.....370

Display.....369

Emergency Assistance.....372

General.....367

Media Player.....370

Navigation System.....372

Phone.....371

Radio.....372

Sound.....369

Valet Mode.....375

Vehicle Settings.....374

Voice Control Recognition.....374

Wi-Fi.....374

Side Airbags (G1477597).....34

Side Curtain Airbags (G1477599).....35

Side Sensing System (G1867958).....162

Object Distance Indicator.....163

Sitting in the Correct Position (G1553331).....108

Snow Chains

See: Using Snow Chains (G1914658).....260

Spare Wheel

See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel (G1883131).....264

Speed Control

See: Cruise Control.....175

Speed Limiter (G1936914).....182

Principle of Operation.....182

Using Speed Limiter.....182

Stability Control.....	156
Principle of Operation (G1477729).....	156
Starter Switch	
See: Ignition Switch (G1518436).....	118
Starting a Diesel Engine (G1608041).....	122
Engine Warning Lamps	123
Failure to Start.....	122
Glow Plug Indicator	123
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes	123
Important Ventilating Information	123
Starting System Information Messages	124
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving	123
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary	123
Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	122
Vehicles with a Push Button Ignition Switch.....	122
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	118
General Information (G1448534).....	118
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With:	
Push Button Start (G1618558).....	121
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	122
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without:	
Push Button Start (G1546401).....	121
Locking the Steering Wheel.....	121
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	121
Steering Wheel.....	59
Storage Compartments.....	117
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3 (G1907906).....	302
Selecting a Bluetooth Source.....	302
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	75
Supplementary Restraints System.....	32
Principle of Operation (G1477594).....	32
Switching Off the Engine (G1477713).....	124
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....	124
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off (G1869723).....	33
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off.....	33
Switching the Passenger Airbag On.....	34
Symbols Glossary (G1470774).....	9
SYNC™ 3.....	307
General Information (G1824128).....	307

SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting (G1823162).....	375
Additional Information and Assistance.....	388
Apps.....	385
Navigation.....	384
Phone.....	383
Resetting the System.....	388
USB and Bluetooth Audio.....	380
Voice command Recognition.....	376
Wi-Fi Connectivity.....	387

T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	281
Tire Care (G1477846).....	259
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit (G1640978).....	252
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (G1928643).....	260
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	261
Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	262
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....	264
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	262
Tire Pressures - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Automatic Transmission (G1892351).....	272
R16 205/45	
R17 Temporary Spare Wheel.....	274
Tire Pressures - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Manual Transmission (G1892350).....	270
R16 205/45	
R17 Temporary Spare Wheel.....	272
Tire Pressures - 1.1L (G1868861).....	274
R16 205/45	
R17 Temporary Spare Wheel.....	276

Tire Pressures - 1.5L Diesel (G1892353).....	276	Track Use.....	247
R16 205/45		Track Use (G1965713).....	247
R17 Temporary Spare Wheel.....	278	Launch Control	247
Tire Pressures - 1.5L EcoBoost™		T	
(G1938064).....	278	Traction Control.....	155
Temporary Spare Wheel	280	Principle of Operation (G1448586).....	155
T		Traffic Sign Recognition (G1562345).....	191
Tire Repair Kit		Principle of Operation.....	191
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles		Using Traffic Sign Recognition.....	191
With: Temporary Mobility Kit (G1640978).....	252	Transmission.....	147
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles		Trip Computer (G1911042).....	85
With: Temporary Mobility Kit		Average Fuel.....	87
(G1640978).....	252	Average Speed.....	87
After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator		Distance to Empty.....	87
Kit.....	257	Instantaneous Fuel.....	87
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator		Personalization.....	86
Kit.....	254	Resetting the Trip Computer.....	85
Tires		Trip Odometer.....	87
See: Wheels and Tires.....	252	Trip Timer.....	87
Tow Ball (G1477788).....	203	U	
Driving With a Trailer.....	204	Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™,	
Driving Without a Trailer.....	205	LHD (G1867971).....	225
Inserting the Tow Ball Arm.....	204	Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™,	
Maintenance.....	205	RHD (G1867972).....	226
Removing the Tow Ball Arm.....	205	Under Hood Overview - 1.1L Duratec, LHD	
Unlocking the Tow Ball Arm		(G1867973).....	227
Mechanism.....	203	Under Hood Overview - 1.1L Duratec, RHD	
Towbar Dimensions (G1867994).....	282	(G1867974).....	228
Towing a Trailer - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.1L,		Under Hood Overview - 1.5L	
1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel (G1703012).....	202	Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, LHD	
Towing a Trailer - 1.5L EcoBoost™		(G1867977).....	229
(G1581962).....	203	Under Hood Overview - 1.5L	
Towing Points (G1869631).....	213	Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, RHD	
Front Towing Point.....	213	(G1867978).....	230
Rear Towing Point.....	214	Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™,	
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels -		LHD (G1867975).....	230
Automatic Transmission (G1693735).....	206	Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™,	
Emergency Towing.....	207	RHD (G1867976).....	231
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels -			
Manual Transmission (G1608049).....	206		
Towing.....	202		

Unique Driving Characteristics.....126

USB Port (G1967465).....303

U

Using Adaptive Cruise Control

(G1868799).....	176
Automatic Cancellation.....	179
Blocked Sensor.....	180
Canceling the Set Speed.....	179
Changing the Set Speed.....	178
Detection Issues.....	179
Following a Vehicle.....	177
Hilly Condition Usage.....	179
Overriding the System.....	178
Resuming the Set Speed.....	179
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....	177
Setting the Gap Distance.....	178
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control	
Off.....	179
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....	177
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	181
System Not Available.....	180
Using Cruise Control (G1868749).....	175
Canceling the Set Speed.....	175
Changing the Set Speed.....	175
Resuming the Set Speed.....	176
Setting the Cruise Speed.....	175
Switching the System Off.....	175
Switching the System On.....	175
Using Snow Chains (G1914658).....	260
Using Stability Control - Excluding: ST	
(G1477730).....	156

Using Stability Control - ST (G1932667).....	157
Reducing Stability Control	157
Stability Control and Traction Control	
Indicator	157
Stability Control and Traction Control Off	
Warning Lamp	157
Switching the System Off	157

U

Using Traction Control (G1913042).....	155
Switching the System On and Off.....	155

Using Voice Recognition (G1907969).....	306
Apps.....	344
Automatic Blower Motor Speed	
Reduction.....	345
Climate Control.....	341
Entertainment.....	340
General.....	324
Navigation.....	343
Phone.....	342
Phone Voice Service.....	306
Voice Settings.....	344
Using Winter Tires (G1477847).....	260

V

Vehicle Care.....	248
Vehicle Dimensions (G1867992).....	281
Vehicle Identification Number	
(G1601750).....	284
Vehicle Identification Plate (G1555683).....	284
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	101
Venting the Moonroof (G1882072).....	75
Vents	
See: Air Vents (G1867596).....	101
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number	
(G1601750).....	284

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators

(G1867939).....	77
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	78
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning	
Lamp.....	78
Automatic Headlamp High Beam	
Indicator.....	78
Auto-Start-Stop Indicator.....	78
Blind Spot Information System	
Indicator.....	78
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	78
Collision Warning System Indicator.....	78
Cruise Control Indicator.....	79
Direction Indicator.....	79
Door Ajar Warning Lamp.....	79

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp.....	79
Engine Warning Lamps.....	79
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....	79
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....	79
Frost Warning Lamp.....	79
Glow Plug Indicator.....	79
Headlamp High Beam Indicator.....	80
Headlamp Low Beam Warning Lamp.....	80
Ignition Warning Lamp.....	80
Lamps on Indicator.....	80
Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp.....	80
Lane Keeping Alert Indicator.....	80
Launch Control Indicator	80
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	80
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....	80
Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....	80
Over Speed Warning Indicator.....	80
Performance Shift Indicator	80
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....	81
Shift Indicator.....	81
Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator.....	81
Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....	81
Warning Triangle (G1477797).....	211
Washer Fluid Check (G1689135).....	237
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior (G1477841).....	248
See: Wipers and Washers.....	61
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel (G1883131).....	264
Wheels and Tires.....	252
General Information (G1477844).....	252
Windows and Mirrors.....	71
Windshield Washers (G1874572).....	63
Heated Washer Jets.....	63
Settings.....	63
Windshield Wipers (G1874570).....	61
Intermittent Wipe.....	61
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	61
Winter Tires	
See: Using Winter Tires (G1477847).....	260
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades (G1448670).....	239
Wipers and Washers.....	61

Draft

